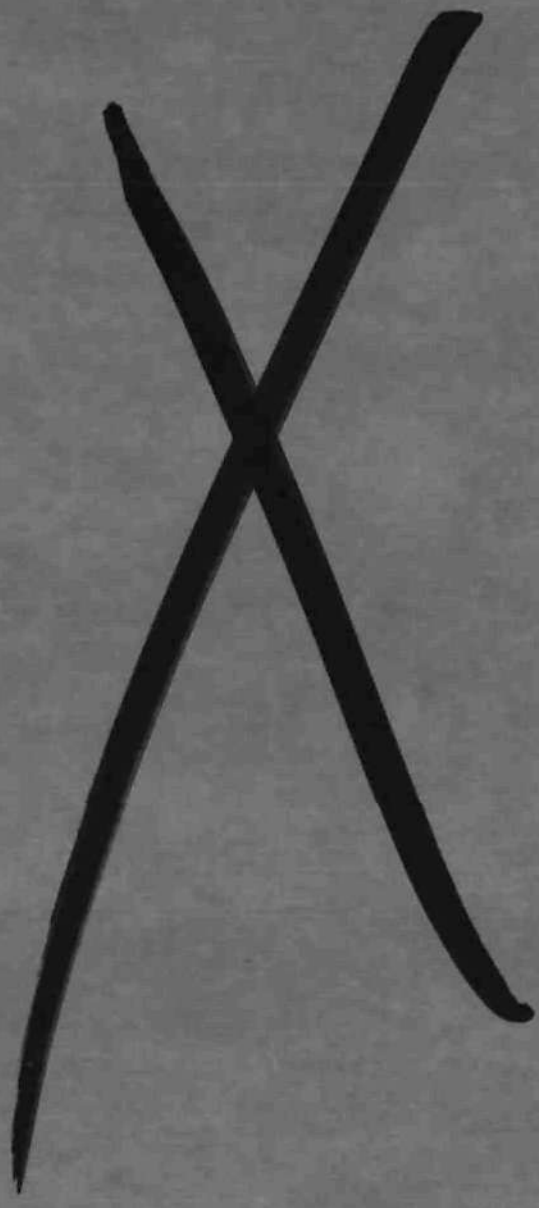


Introduction to the Service

The Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service (SEMS) is a comprehensive, worldwide information service that documents and analyzes important aspects of the Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Industry. The service consists of:

- Two 3–inch, loose–leaf binders containing reference data base material that is continually revised and updated as developments occur or additional information becomes available
- Newsletters providing executive summaries of key industry events or significant changes in the reference material from the other binders; a newsletter binder is provided for storing this material
- Inquiry privileges for two individuals at each subscribing company; this service provides an open line to the research staff for amplification of data base and newsletter information
- An annual three–day conference with industry experts discussing developments of current interest and importance

The service analyzes and reports on the equipment and materials used in the production of semiconductors and assesses the effects of rapid industry growth, frequent and rapid industry fluctuations, technological complexity, technological innovations, short product cycles, and fierce competition. To answer questions on the industry, the service will:

- Discuss current and emerging technologies and trends, including historical and forecast market data, and market shares for each major type of equipment and materials
- Provide profiles of worldwide equipment and materials companies and company financial reports
- Provide a complete picture of the semiconductor industry including its problems and trends as well as locations of semiconductor facilities and the technologies produced at these locations
- Present current, forecast, and historical capital spending by the worldwide semiconductor industry, analyzed by company
- Provide analyses of industry wafer fabrication capacity and its effect on both the semiconductor companies and the equipment and materials companies including actual wafer starts, excess capacity, and forecasts of capacity utilization.
- Present worldwide semiconductor production, revenue/square inch of silicon, and other key ratios for the semiconductor and the equipment and materials industry

Introduction to the Service

NEED FOR THE SERVICE

The semiconductor equipment and materials industry is characterized by technological complexity, a proliferation of market opportunities, intense competition, and shorter product life cycles. Since this is a rapidly changing environment, it is of crucial importance to many firms to keep abreast of the technological changes and to assess their impact, both on the semiconductor industry and on the equipment and materials industry. No other organization maintains complete or even near-complete statistics on capital spending, capacity, and key semiconductor ratios. This information will be vital input for strategic corporate decisions in both the semiconductor and the equipment and materials companies. Dataquest's aim is to help remove the uncertainty surrounding major capital spending decisions and to give decision makers the tools to make more confident decisions. The Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service aims to provide this type of data through continuous industry coverage, and careful assemblage and assessment of observed trends.

The service is staffed with veteran industry analysts who maintain continuous contact with key trendsetters in the industry, including industry executives, marketing and engineering managers, start-up firms, and individual technologists who are recognized for their contributions to past technical symposiums. The inquiry privilege provides a means for clients to gain access to the thinking of service analysts while new trends are still developing. Often these trends become apparent before a significant body of market data is available for publication.

We believe that the Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service offers our clients an excellent tool with which to make solid and confident business decisions. We maintain every possible effort to fulfill our commitment to the semiconductor and related electronic industries through publication of information—in a convenient format—collected during Dataquest's continuous worldwide industry coverage.

SERVICE STRUCTURE AND TERMINOLOGY

The service is divided into two data base reference volumes plus one newsletter volume, as follows:

- Markets and Technology
- Industry Econometrics
- Newsletters and Bulletins

Introduction to the Service

Whenever a section of a data base reference volume is updated, a newsletter is issued summarizing significant changes since the last update. Additional newsletters may be generated from time to time on significant industry events. Portions of these newsletters may be incorporated in the data base volume when the appropriate section is next updated.

The Markets and Technology volume covers semiconductor equipment and materials markets in detail. Currently, coverage is/will be provided on:

- Manufacturing operations
- Maskmaking
- Semiconductor manufacturing automation
- Wafer fabrication equipment
- Wafer fabrication materials
- Equipment data base
- Market share data
- Packaging and materials
- Technology trends

The Industry Econometrics volume covers productivity trends in semiconductor manufacturing and profiles semiconductor equipment and materials companies. Coverage is/will be provided on:

- Companies (with alphabetical tabs)
- Financial aggregates
- Capital spending
- Manufacturing capacity
- Semiconductor manufacturing
- Semiconductor industry ratios
- Economic outlook

Introduction to the Service

SERVICE ORGANIZATION AND CODING

To minimize difficulties in updating and referencing information, Dataquest has developed a flexible organizational hierarchy and associated coding for the individual components that make up the entire set of binders. This scheme is used to allow the organization of the notebooks to be changed as markets change.

Each data base notebook is organized into a set of subject tabs. A list of these tabs is provided at the front of each notebook. A service section within each tabbed section can be recognized by the title, and each section has its pages numbered consecutively, starting with page one. A list of publications within each tabbed section is filed immediately behind each tab.

The newsletter notebook has monthly tabs, a list of the publications behind each tab, and a cross-reference index.

SERVICE FEATURES AND PROCEDURES

Because of the large quantity of printed information that will be available for insertion, the binders are a multivolume set. The volume name appears on the spine of each volume. Section tabs are included for easy reference, with new ones added as new material is added to the notebook.

The date of preparation is noted on the bottom of each page. When there are major revisions, entire sections or subsections are updated. Each new version replaces the earlier one in its entirety, and is added to the book, behind the appropriate tab. A new list of publications is provided whenever a new publication is added behind the tab.

Newsletters take two forms—reports and analyses. Newsletters that contain information of a general reporting nature, such as trade show reviews, meeting summaries, mergers, and shifts of personnel, are intended for current news and will be utilized in later analyses and updates of sections and subsections. Newsletters are always filed chronologically in the newsletter notebook.

The inquiry privilege permits subscribers to contact Dataquest by mail, telegram, telephone, telex, or in person to ask for copies of printed material, data, or options on topics covered by the service. With the exception of confidential or proprietary material, Dataquest's complete files on the semiconductor industry—as well as its entire staff of electronics specialists—are available to subscribers.

Our annual three-day conference covers topics of timely interest and importance. Programs include outside speakers, panel discussions, and demonstrations. Participants have the opportunity to mingle with skilled industry specialists.

Introduction to the Service

Because we wish the service to be responsive to industry needs, we welcome suggestions for changes. We will periodically poll all subscribers to determine the topics that should be given priority, or new ones that should be added.

SERVICE STAFF

Frederick L. Zieber

Mr. Zieber is Executive Vice President of Dataquest and General Manager of Technology Operations. Technology Operations includes all syndicated industry services, consulting activities, and electronic industries information research. Previously, he was General Manager and founder of Dataquest's Semiconductor Division. Mr. Zieber has 14 years of experience in market research and consulting. Prior to that, he worked in the semiconductor industry for 9 years. He has experience in processing, designing, manufacturing, and testing integrated circuits and discrete devices. He holds two patents in semiconductor processing. Mr. Zieber has a B.S. degree in Electrical Engineering from Stanford University and an M.B.A. degree from the Graduate School of Business at Stanford University.

Gene Norrett

Mr. Norrett is a Vice President of Dataquest and General Manager of its Components Division (CD). In this capacity, he has direct responsibility for all U.S. research and coordinates European and Japan–based research. Prior to becoming SIG Director, he founded Dataquest's Japanese Semiconductor Industry Service and was Acting Managing Director of Dataquest Japan K.K. Before joining Dataquest, Mr. Norrett spent 14 years with the Motorola Semiconductor Product Sector, serving in various marketing and management positions. He has traveled extensively in Japan, Hong Kong, Taiwan, Korea, China, and Europe. Mr. Norrett's educational background includes a B.A. degree in Mathematics from Temple University and an M.S. degree in Applied Statistics from Villanova University. He has also taken graduate courses in Marketing from Arizona State University.

Introduction to the Service

Robert E. McGeary

Mr. McGeary is the Director of Dataquest's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. Prior to joining Dataquest, he was Product Marketing Manager at Applied Materials, Inc., where he managed the worldwide product marketing activities for the Dry Etch Division and managed product support for the company's European dry etch business. Previously, he worked as Product Marketing Manager at GCA Corporation's IC Systems group, as an Accelerator Physicist at Lawrence Berkeley Laboratories, as a Nuclear Engineer at Mare Island Naval Shipyard, and as a Reactor Operator at the University of Washington. Mr. McGeary received a B.S. degree in Physics and Mathematics from the University of Washington and an M.B.A. degree from St. Mary's College.

Joseph Grenier

Mr. Grenier is Associate Director for Dataquest's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. He is responsible for analyzing the market environment and future technology trends. Prior to joining Dataquest, he was Product Marketing Manager at GCA Corporation, where he was responsible for the reactive ion etch program. He also served as International Marketing Manager at GCA, and was responsible for the overseas marketing of wafer processing equipment. Previously, he worked as a Product Manager at Varian Associates' Instrument Division, as a Systems Engineer at the USAF Satellite Test Center, and as a Test Engineer at General Motors' Noise and Vibration Laboratory. Mr. Grenier received a B.S.E.E. degree from the University of Detroit and an M.B.A. degree from the University of Santa Clara.

George Burns

Mr. Burns is an Industry Analyst for Dataquest's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. He is responsible for the service's Econometrics notebook. Before joining Dataquest, he worked at Plantronics/Santa Cruz, where he was a Product Marketing Analyst and a Product Manager. Among his responsibilities were new product definition, new product introductions, and forecasting. Mr. Burns received a B.A. degree in Economics from the University of California at Santa Cruz and an M.B.A. degree in Marketing from San Jose State University.

Introduction to the Service

Peggy Marie Wood

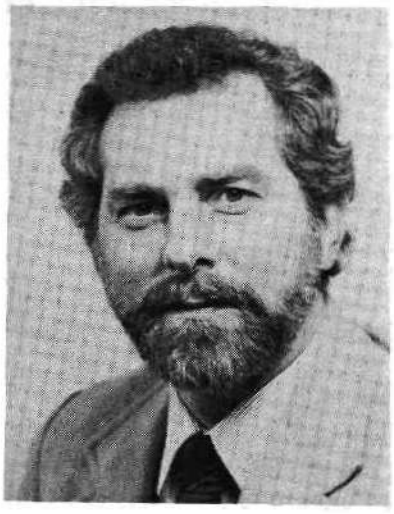
Ms. Wood is an Industry Analyst for Dataquest's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. Her responsibilities include research and analysis of the semiconductor industry with respect to fabrication materials, processing equipment, and the technology and trends of semiconductor manufacturing automation. Prior to joining Dataquest, Ms. Wood was a postdoctoral research affiliate in the Department of Chemistry at Stanford University. While at Stanford, she supervised the installation of new research facilities and was responsible for the purchase of optical, electronic, and laser equipment. In addition to pursuing her own research in nonlinear chemical dynamics, Ms. Wood taught undergraduate laboratory courses and supervised graduate student research. Ms. Wood received a B.S. degree in Chemistry from California State University at Sacramento and a Ph.D. in Chemistry from Stanford University.

Mark Reagan

Mr. Reagan is a Research Analyst for Dataquest's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service (SEMS). His primary responsibilities include maintenance of the SEMS worldwide fab data base and research support for the service's Econometrics notebook. Mr. Reagan has also performed research in the chemical vapor deposition, diffusion furnance, and physical vapor deposition equipment areas. Before joining Dataquest, Mr. Reagan worked as an Industry Consultant. In this capacity, he performed consulting projects for Dataquest involving the North American fab data base, financial aggregates, and R&D expenditures and aided in updating the company's worldwide equipment data base. Mr. Reagan received a B.A. degree in Business/Marketing from Western State College of Colorado at Gunnison.

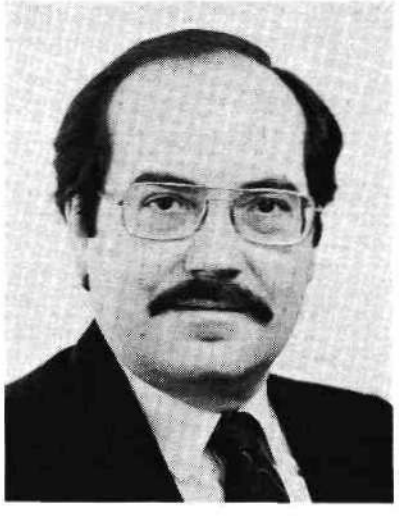
Introduction to the Service

Robert E. McGeary



Mr. McGeary is the Director of DATAQUEST's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. Prior to joining DATAQUEST, he was Product Marketing Manager at Applied Materials, Inc., where he managed the worldwide product marketing activities for the Dry Etch Division and managed product support for the company's European dry etch business. Previously, he worked as Product Marketing Manager at GCA Corporation's IC Systems group, as an Accelerator Physicist at Lawrence Berkeley Laboratories, as a Nuclear Engineer at Mare Island Naval Shipyard, and as a Reactor Operator at the University of Washington. Mr. McGeary received a B.S. degree in Physics and Mathematics from the University of Washington and an M.B.A. degree from St. Mary's College.

Joseph Grenier



Mr. Grenier is a Senior Industry Analyst for DATAQUEST's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. He is responsible for analyzing the market environment and future technology trends. Prior to joining DATAQUEST, he was Product Marketing Manager at GCA Corporation, where he was responsible for the reactive ion etch program. He also served as International Marketing Manager at GCA, and was responsible for the overseas marketing of wafer processing equipment. Previously, he worked as a Product Manager at Varian Associates' Instrument Division, as a Systems Engineer at the USAF Satellite Test Center, and as a Test Engineer at General Motor's Noise and Vibration Laboratory. Mr. Grenier received a B.S.E.E. degree from the University of Detroit and an M.B.A. degree from the University of Santa Clara.

Introduction to the Service

George Burns

Mr. Burns is a Research Analyst for DATAQUEST's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. He is responsible for the service's Econometrics notebook. Before joining DATAQUEST, he worked at Plantronics/Santa Cruz, where he was a Product Marketing Analyst and a Product Manager. Among his responsibilities were new product definition, new product introductions, and forecasting. Mr. Burns received a B.A. degree in Economics from the University of California at Santa Cruz and an M.B.A. degree in Marketing from San Jose State University.

Peggy Wood

Ms. Wood is a Research Analyst for DATAQUEST's Semiconductor Equipment and Materials Service. Her responsibilities include research and analysis of the semiconductor industry with respect to usage of materials in the semiconductor fabrication process. Prior to joining DATAQUEST, Ms. Wood was a postdoctoral research affiliate in the Department of Chemistry at Stanford University. In addition to pursuing her own research in nonlinear chemical dynamics, Ms. Wood has taught undergraduate laboratory courses and supervised graduate student research. Ms. Wood received a B.S. degree in Chemistry from California State University at Sacramento and a Ph.D. in Chemistry from Stanford University.

Introduction to the Service

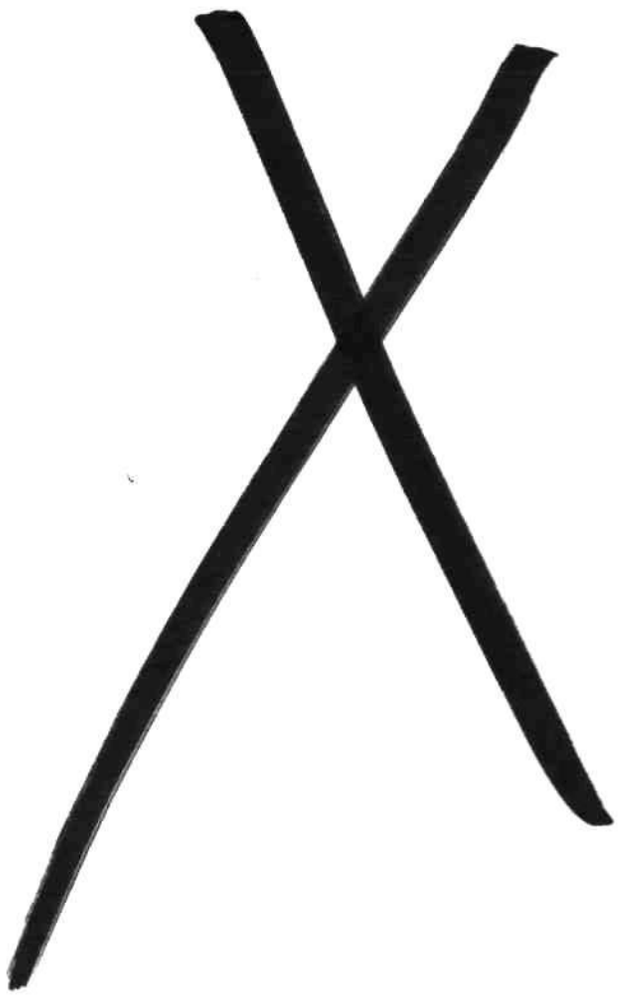
Frederick L. Zieber

Mr. Zieber is Executive Vice President of DATAQUEST and General Manager of Technology Operations. Technology Operations includes all syndicated industry services, consulting activities, and electronic industries information research. Previously, he was General Manager and founder of DATAQUEST's Semiconductor Division. Mr. Zieber has 14 years of experience in market research and consulting. Prior to that, he worked in the semiconductor industry for 9 years. He has experience in processing, designing, manufacturing, and testing integrated circuits and discrete devices. He holds two patents in semiconductor processing. Mr. Zieber has a B.S. degree in Electrical Engineering from Stanford University and an M.B.A. degree from the Graduate School of Business at Stanford University.

Introduction to the Service

Howard Z. Bogert

Mr. Bogert is a Vice President of DATAQUEST and Director of its Semiconductor Industry Group. He is responsible for consulting, publishing, and research activities in semiconductor products, technologies, and suppliers. Prior to assuming his management duties at DATAQUEST, Mr. Bogert developed the concept of ASICs. Under his direction, DATAQUEST was the first market research company to follow that market. During his 25 years in electronics, Mr. Bogert has held management positions in market research, product planning, long-range planning, research and development, and engineering. Before coming to DATAQUEST, he was a Divisional Vice President of Engineering for Rockwell International. Prior to that, he was Director of MOS Development for Siliconix and Manager of Design for AMI. Mr. Bogert holds six patents in the MOS VLSI field, and developed the first MOS circuit to use charge storage. He was also an early contributor to the design of linear integrated circuits. Mr. Bogert received a B.S. degree in Electrical Engineering from Stanford University, an M.S. degree from the University of Maryland, and an M.B.A. degree from the University of Santa Clara.



Manufacturing Capacity

INTRODUCTION

This section is a discussion of capital productivity, process productivity and equipment productivity. It examines the factors that drive these productivities and presents a forecast for the productivities. It also looks at historical capacity and capacity utilization and presents Dataquest's forecast of capacity and capacity utilization.

Definition of Capital Productivity

Productivity is usually defined as a measure of output per unit of input. Capital productivity is defined as revenue per dollar of property, plant, and equipment (PPE). This ratio can be expressed as the product of its two components, process productivity and equipment productivity:

$$P(C) = P(P) \times P(E)$$

where:

P(C) = capital productivity

P(P) = process productivity

P(E) = equipment productivity

and P(P) = (revenue)/(square inches)

P(E) = (square inches)/(PPE)

and therefore:

$$P(P) \times P(E) = (\text{revenue})/(\text{square inches}) \times (\text{square inches})/(\text{PPE})$$

$$= (\text{revenue})/(\text{PPE})$$

$$= P(C)$$

Manufacturing Capacity

EQUIPMENT PRODUCTIVITY

Equipment productivity--P(E)--is the productivity of PPE. It is measured in square inches of silicon per dollar of PPE. Equipment productivity can be divided into three factors: reliability, utilization, and throughput. For instance:

$$P(E) = R \times U \times T$$

where:

R = reliability

U = utilization

T = throughput per dollar PPE

Reliability

Equipment reliability is measured by four parameters in the following formula:

$$R = 1 - MTTR/MTBR \quad MTTA/MTBA$$

where:

MTBF = mean time between failures

MTTR = mean time to repair

MTBA = mean time between assists

MTTA = mean time to assist

For example, if MTBF = 1,000 hours, MTTR = 1 hour, MTBA = 500 hours, and MTTA = 2 minutes, then R = 0.9989.

Reliability is becoming increasingly important for in-line processing. As reliability increases, there is less need for redundancy; for example, with increased reliability, a firm may be able to operate with one etcher instead of the two needed previously to ensure continuous production.

Service contracts are being offered by equipment vendors today that, for a premium, offer 95 percent reliability. Reliability is and will continue to be an important element in the competition between equipment vendors. Because of this, some equipment vendors have reorganized and are maintaining large field service groups as separate P&L centers.

Manufacturing Capacity

Dataquest estimates that reliability is currently in the 85 percent range and that it will rise to 98 percent by the year 2000. As an illustration of the importance of reliability, consider the following example. Assume that there are five pieces of equipment with a reliability rating of 90 percent. For the five machines working together, their combined reliability is 90 percent to the fifth power, i.e., (0.9) x (0.9) x (0.9) x (0.9) x (0.9) = 0.59, or 59 percent. If the reliability of the individual pieces of equipment can be increased to 0.95, then the overall reliability of the five machines working together is raised to 77 percent.

Reliability is also important because it affects equipment utilization. When a piece of equipment is down, queues form upstream from the downed equipment, and equipment downstream stands idle. Line balance, which is so important for the efficient manufacture of complex product mixes, is upset. Not only is time lost on the downed piece of equipment, but utilization is also lost on the equipment downstream. Lost utilization increases cycle time, and, as the wafers wait in ever-lengthening queues, their chances of getting hit by particulate contamination increase. Thus, yields decrease.

Utilization

Utilization refers to the use of equipment once it is available for use. The average equipment utilization for North American semiconductor companies is about 32 percent. In other words, equipment sits idle almost 70 percent of the time. This is primarily a function of inefficiencies in the production process caused by having to plan large mixes of products with many process steps for many different customers.

Additionally, as discussed above, there are inefficiencies in utilization caused by reliability problems. It should be noted that in Japan, dedicated plants obtain a higher utilization than that of their U.S. counterparts because the Japanese plants have less process/product variation.

Dataquest believes that equipment utilization will increase due to computer-aided manufacturing and automation systems that will enable manufacturers to balance and optimize their product mixes. Utilization will also increase as semiconductor manufacturers demand more and more reliability and quality from their equipment and materials vendors.

Dataquest believes that utilization is the biggest area of opportunity for semiconductor manufacturers to improve equipment productivity. We believe this because equipment reliability is already high (85 percent), and we expect throughput per dollar of PPE to continue to be low because of high equipment costs. This leaves utilization as the equipment productivity variable with most potential. Dataquest believes that utilization will increase to 60 percent by 1995 and 75 percent by the year 2000.

Manufacturing Capacity

Throughput

Wafer throughput, the equipment's wafer-handling capacity, is measured in square inches of silicon per year per dollar of PPE.

Process wafer-handling capability has increased only slightly. For single-wafer processing, it has increased as wafer size has increased. For those processes that have always been single-wafer dependent, this trend has increased throughput.

However, for those processes that have changed from batch to single-wafer processes, there has been a loss in wafer-handling capability. This is because batch wafer-handling has had a higher throughput than single-wafer handling, and a change from batch to single wafer represents a lessening of throughput. Although batch systems have had a higher wafer-handling capability, we now believe that the wafer-handling capability for the two types of processes to be at approximate parity. We do not, therefore, expect that the migration from batch to single-wafer handling will cause any further decrease in wafer-handling capability.

Because of the factors mentioned previously, wafer-handling capability has increased only slightly over the last 10 years. However, as the industry marches into submicron ranges, the attempt to increase wafer-handling capabilities will begin to run into physical limits. This is because, in the submicron range, fabrication operations (i.e., alignment) take much more time as the geometries become ever smaller.

On the other hand, although the wafer-handling ability of equipment has increased only slightly over the last 10 years, the price of equipment has not been so shy. It has increased dramatically over the years, with the result that throughput, measured in square inches per dollar of PPE, has fallen.

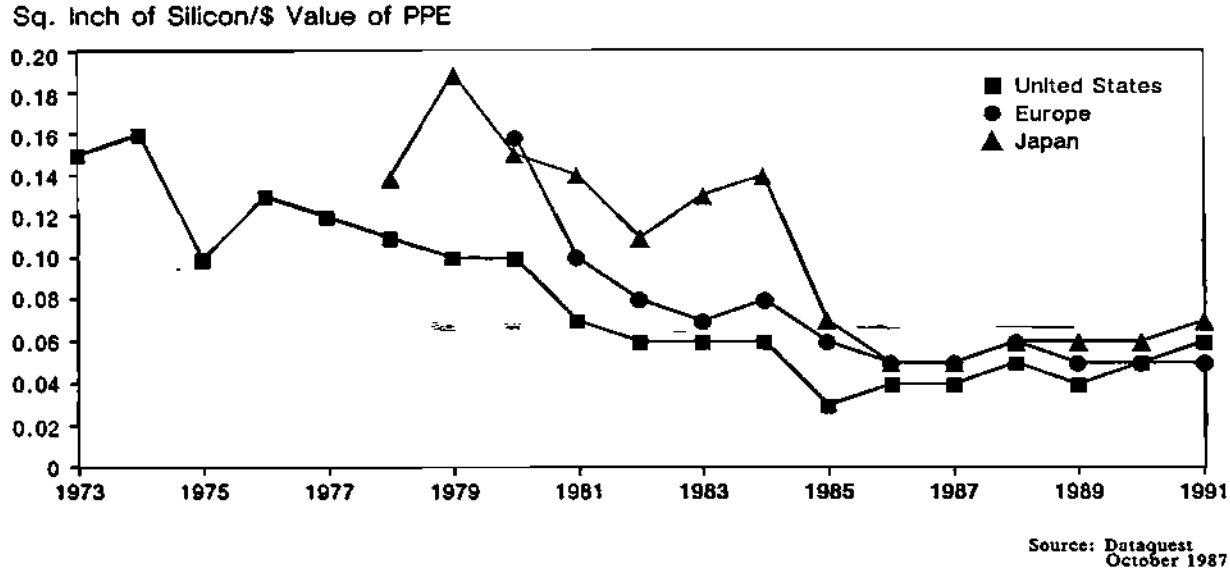
The Future of Equipment Productivity

Figure 1 shows Dataquest's analysis of equipment productivity for the regions of Europe, Japan, and North America. Figure 2 shows historical and forecast equipment productivity for the entire world.

Manufacturing Capacity

Figure 1

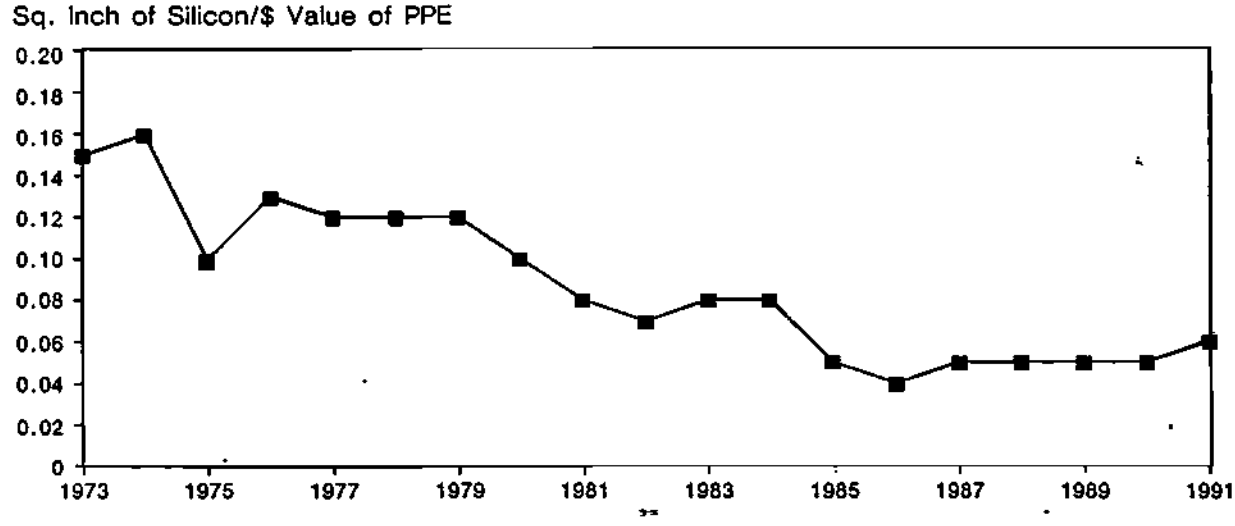
REGIONAL SQUARE INCHES PER PPE



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

Figure 2

WORLDWIDE SQUARE INCHES PER PPE



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

Manufacturing Capacity

The rest of the world (ROW) is not included because there is not yet enough historical data to yield meaningful ratios. ROW's equipment productivity is typically low because ROW is on a production ramp. It is building capacity before it manufactures products.

Equipment productivity in Europe, Japan, and North America has generally moved in parallel, although the countries' production magnitudes have been different. Europe has the highest equipment productivity because, of the three regions, more of its production has been in older technologies with higher yields and throughputs.

Equipment productivity in North America has tended to be below that of both Europe and Japan. This has been due, partly, to lower levels of reliability, especially compared with Japan. North American manufacturers have also tended to have more products in a fab, and thus more process changes. Their relatively larger number of process changes have caused North American utilization rates to be lower than those of their European or Japanese counterparts.

Equipment productivity for Europe, Japan, and North America fell from 1973 to 1986. Since both reliability and utilization have been relatively unchanging in this period, we believe that it is the drop in throughput per dollar of PPE (discussed earlier) that is responsible for the drop in equipment productivity from 1973 to 1986.

However, we believe that equipment productivity in Europe, Japan, North America, and ROW will show an increase. This upturn will be due primarily to increased utilization, which will increase for two reasons. The first is that utilization tends to increase as the industry recovers from a recession. The second reason is the slow but inevitable advent of computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM). A key component of the CIM strategy is the use of computers to optimize line balance, which, in turn, optimizes utilization.

PROCESS PRODUCTIVITY

Process productivity--P(P)--is defined as revenue per square inch of silicon. It is a measure of the revenue generated by silicon input. Revenue per square inch of silicon is a function of the average sales price (ASP), changes in inventory induced by the business cycle, manufacturing yields, and die size.

Given any amount of silicon in square inches, revenue is a direct function of ASPs. Revenue will tend to increase as ASPs increase, and conversely. ASPs will increase over the long term both because of the

increasing value of devices, and because of the generally higher costs associated with manufacture. However, in the short term, ASPs tend to rise and fall with the waves of the business cycle. In a downturn, when capacity exceeds supply, ASPs trend to decrease. In an upturn, when capacity is constrained relative to demand, ASPs tend to rise.

Business cycle effects are not limited to ASPs. The ups and downs of the business cycle also affects the square inches carried in inventory, and thus the revenue per square inch. During an expansion, work in process and pipeline inventory tend to expand, which in turn causes an increase in silicon consumption without a proportional increase in revenue. Conversely, when unit sales of devices slow down or decline, revenue is generated from work in process and contraction of the pipeline without a corresponding increase in square inches purchased.

The business cycle also affects process productivity in another way: through yields. During an expansion, new equipment, new processes, and new labor personnel are brought into the production process. Since they are at the beginning of their learning curves, all of these factors tend to decrease yields.

Yields are affected positively by decreases in particulate contamination. Particulate contamination caused by human beings has been the focus of much study in recent years. Because of this attention, it is becoming less of a source of contamination. Contamination caused by particulate housed in the equipment is now becoming a major source of contamination. Manufacturers are now beginning to specify minimum particulate contribution for each wafer pass through the equipment. We believe that as the problem of equipment-caused contamination is addressed and solved, yields will increase. Advances in automation that will further eliminate human contact from wafer processing will also continue to increase yields.

Process productivity is inversely proportional to die size. That is, as die size increases, process productivity decreases. This is because increasing the die size decreases both the number of die per square inch and the yields. So for a given ASP, there will be less revenue per square inch.

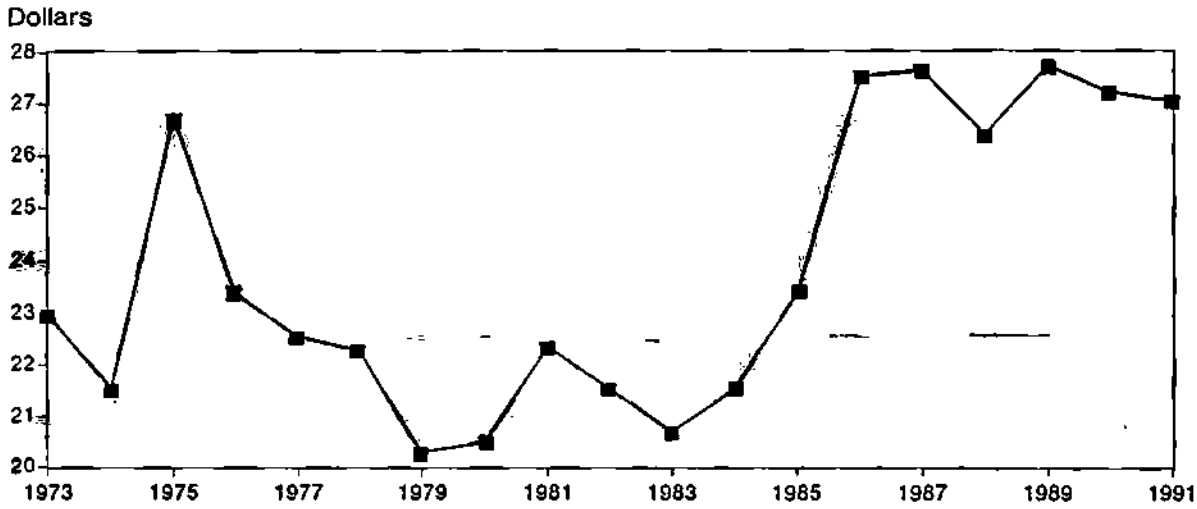
Regional Process Productivity

Figure 3 shows Dataquest's estimates of actual historical and forecast worldwide process productivity. Figure 4 shows process productivity for Europe, Japan, and North America. ROW is not included in Figure 4 because the imbalance of information flows within a region cause ROW's estimate of process productivity to be artificially low.

Manufacturing Capacity

Figure 3

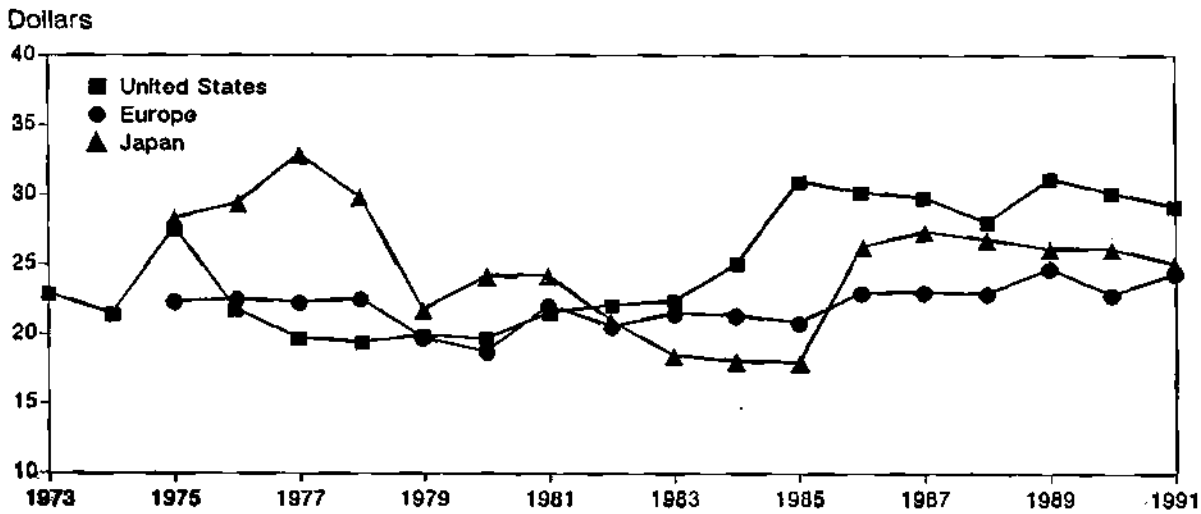
REVENUE PER SQUARE INCH--WORLDWIDE



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

Figure 4

REVENUE PER SQUARE INCH--EUROPE, JAPAN, AND NORTH AMERICA



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

Manufacturing Capacity

Process productivity in Japan fell in the early 1980s when Japan entered the memory market in a big way and tended to sell at lower ASPs. This, along with its tendency to use a much higher percentage of test wafers, caused its process productivity to fall to levels below that of North America or Europe. In 1986, however, with the advent of foreign market value (FMV) pricing, Japanese process productivity increased markedly.

North American process productivity has tended to rise since 1978 as North American manufacturers tended to seek out product areas, such as microprocessors, with higher ASPs. We believe that this rise in process productivity for North American manufacturers will not continue for two reasons. First, off-shore manufacturers increasingly locate their fabrication facilities in North America. Second, products with higher ASPs, such as ASICs, will be manufactured by companies from every region of the world, so competition in these niches will heat up.

European process productivity has been lower than that of its North American counterparts, and we believe that its process productivity will be lower than that of the Japanese manufacturers in the future. European manufacturers have tended to produce relatively low-ASP products and to achieve slightly lower yields than their North American or Japanese counterparts.

Note that Figure 3 shows that process productivity declined fairly steadily until 1980, and in 1984 it began a rather significant climb. We believe that process productivity will continue to rise for at least the rest of this decade. This increase is the result of increasing yields from better-understood processes, cleaner environments, better quality control, and better quality of materials. The advent of CIM will decrease work in process, shorten cycle time, thereby lessening particulate contamination.

CAPITAL PRODUCTIVITY

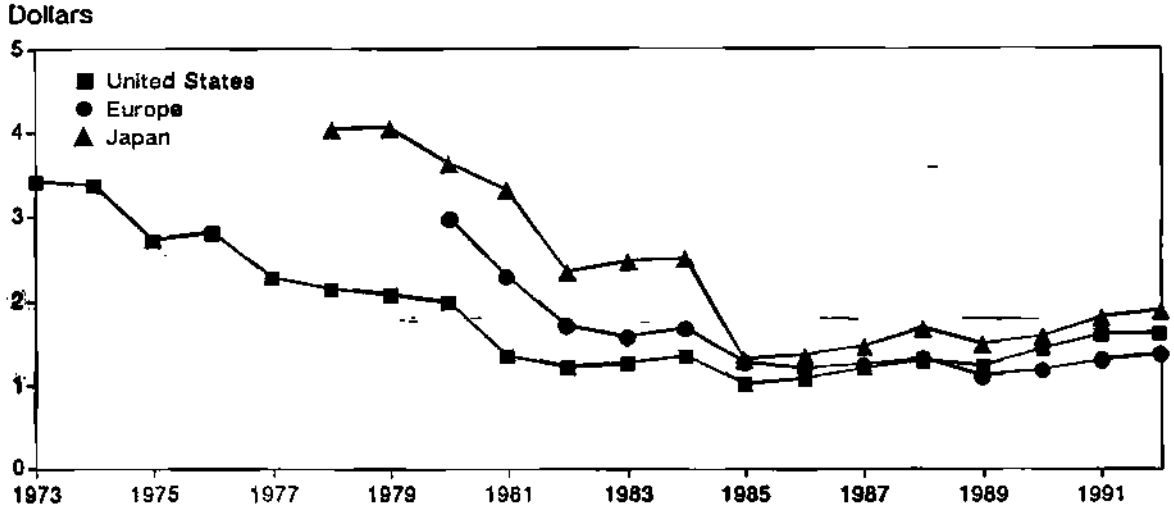
Capital productivity (revenue per dollar of PPE) rises and falls because of the effects of equipment and process productivity. Dataquest has tracked the effects of historic process productivity and equipment productivity on capital productivity from 1973 through 1986. Figure 5 and Table 1 show this historic relationship and forecasts capital productivity for all the regions of the world as well as the worldwide aggregate.

We expect capital productivity in the ROW region to remain significantly below the average. This is because we expect the Asian Pacific Rim countries to continue to add to capacity at a faster rate than they will be adding to production.

Manufacturing Capacity

Figure 5

REVENUE PER DOLLAR OF PPE



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

Table 1

REVENUE PER DOLLAR OF PPE

	Actual							
	1979	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Rev/PPE	$2.45	$2.04	$1.76	$1.50	$1.56	$1.57	$1.06	$1.12
United States	$2.09	$2.00	$1.36	$1.23	$1.27	$1.36	$1.03	$1.09
Europe	-	-	$3.09	$2.19	$1.96	$2.26	$1.54	$1.41
Japan	$4.01	$3.60	$3.32	$2.36	$2.47	$2.50	$1.30	$1.35

	Forecast					
	1987	1988	1989	1990	1991	1992
Rev/PPE	$1.21	$1.30	$1.18	$1.30	$1.47	$1.49
United States	$1.21	$1.30	$1.24	$1.44	$1.62	$1.63
Europe	$1.48	$1.58	$1.31	$1.33	$1.52	$1.64
Japan	$1.43	$1.62	$1.44	$1.56	$1.86	$1.95

Source: Dataquest
October 1987

Manufacturing Capacity

Worldwide capital productivity fell from $3.40 in 1973 to $0.99 in 1985. We believe that this downward trend stopped in 1985, and that, on the average, it will continue to rise in the future because of both increasing yields and utilization.

Although Europe has had an edge over both Japanese and North American manufacturers in equipment productivity (because of its high equipment productivity), we believe that capital productivity in these three regions will converge to the $1.40 to $1.60 range. This convergence will come about because of globalization of manufacturing. European companies will increasingly have fabs outside their home region, as will Japanese and North American companies. A further reason for this convergence is that competition will be extended and intensified in all product markets. No one country or region will have an automatic lock on a product market, such as memories, ASICs, or MPUs.

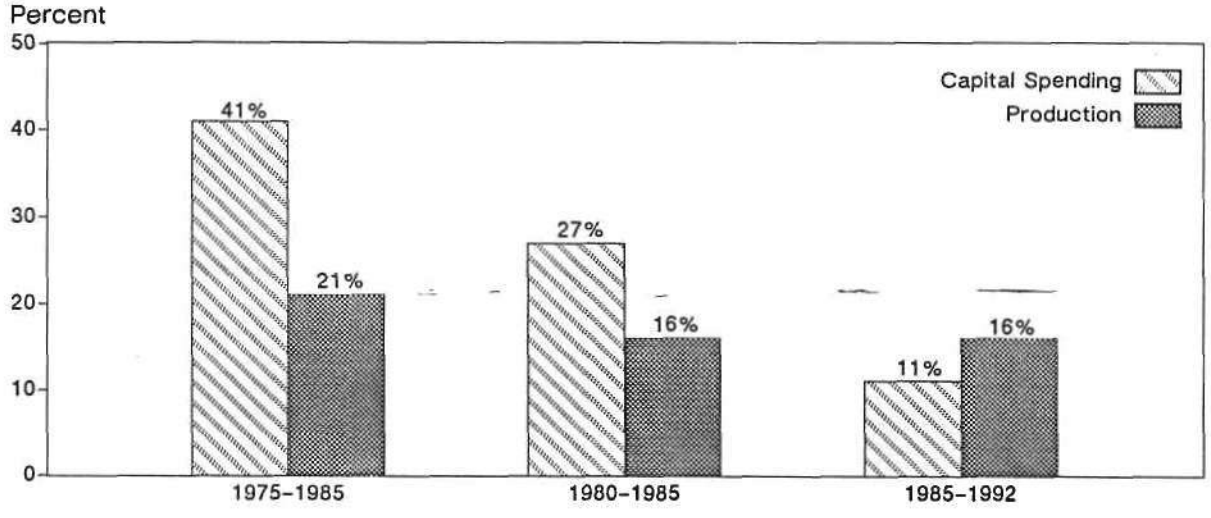
An important implication of rising capital productivity is that as capital becomes more productive, it will take less equipment to generate any given amount of revenue. Figure 6 illustrates the effects of increasing capital productivity on the growth rate of capital spending. Historically, the growth rate of capital spending has been greater than that of semiconductor production. We believe that the reverse will be true in the future. This is particularly important to equipment manufacturers. Upsurges in capital spending will no longer lift equipment vendors as high as they have in the past. There will still be growth, but not as strong as in previous years.

Demand for materials, too, will be weakened by the improvement of capital productivity. As line balance and utilization improve through the increased use of computer-aided manufacturing, there will be a corresponding decrease in work-in-process (WIP) inventory. This effectively shortens cycle times and thus lowers the probability of particulate contamination. As yields tend to increase, there will be less of an increase in materials usage for any given increase in semiconductor revenue. In other words, materials vendors, like equipment vendors, will participate to a lesser degree in semiconductor industry upturns than they have in the past. However, the value added to the devices (usually perceived as quality), and hence the dollar value, will continue to command a significant percentage of the cost of manufacturing.

Manufacturing Capacity

Figure 6

DECLINING CAGR
CAPITAL SPENDING VERSUS PRODUCTION



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

CAPACITY

Capacity utilization directly affects ASPs, which, in turn, affect revenue, the productivity of capital, and the strategic planning of both semiconductor manufacturers and semiconductor equipment vendors. The following paragraphs discuss these relationships.

The effect of capacity utilization on ASPs and revenue holds true both for individual companies and for the industry as a whole. When capacity utilization is high, there tend to be device shortages and long lead times, so products command a higher price to clear the market. Conversely, excess capacity exerts downward pressure on ASPs as manufacturers attempt to stimulate demand and maintain market share by cutting price.

Both process productivity and capital productivity are directly affected by capacity utilization. Falling ASPs lead to less revenue per square inch or per dollar value of PPE. In an upturn, when ASPs tend to rise, the opposite tends to be true: there is more revenue per square inch or per dollar value of PPE.

Manufacturing Capacity

Industry capacity is important to the individual manufacturer in strategic planning for long-term production cycles. When the firm is operating at or near capacity, most of its resources are dedicated to manufacturing existing products rather than developing new products. When industry capacity utilization is high, many firms just cannot fill the demand for their products. Planning for capacity at peaks of industry demand is therefore an excellent strategy to increase market share. Lack of such planning is an equally excellent way to lose market share.

In a downturn, when there is excess capacity, the emphasis is no longer primarily on manufacturing or just getting the product out the door. This is the time for refining manufacturing practices to increase yields and productivity.

Downturns are also the time for the introduction of new products. In a downturn, it is much easier to shift engineers from sustaining-engineering projects to new-product projects. Maskmakers are a good example of this. Reprint work generally correlates with expansions, and new tooling generally coincides with downturns and excess capacity. Basically, new products can stimulate demand and take advantage of unused capacity, without price and margin reductions.

Semiconductor capacity utilization is important not only to semiconductor manufacturers, but also to equipment vendors. North American semiconductor manufacturers generally adjust their capital spending during a downturn in one way--they cut back their capital expenditures when utilization plummets. Knowledge of future utilization would allow equipment vendors to plan their expansions so that their capacity coincides with demand.

When capacity utilization is high, times are good. When capacity utilization is down, times are bad. Accurate forecasting of capacity utilization implies an accurate forecast of the business cycle. Capacity planning will moderate the effects that the business cycle has on individual companies. For the industry as a whole, capacity planning could moderate the business cycle itself. Individual companies engage in capacity planning when they reserve a part of their capacity for a particular large customer. This tends to eliminate double and triple orders, which makes for a more stable and realistic backlog, thereby moderating plans for expansion.

Foundry relationships are another capacity planning method that is growing in popularity, in which both individual companies and the industry as a whole is engaging in capacity management. By using foundry manufacturers for peak demand, major manufacturers are able to shift excess capacity risk to the foundries themselves.

Manufacturing Capacity

Definition of Capacity

Dataquest measures capacity in square inches of silicon. We have chosen square inches of silicon as our basic measuring unit for the following reasons:

- Silicon is the raw material used and processed in wafer fabrication plants.
- Square inches of silicon is easily measurable.
- Good die per square inch is a good indicator of yield.
- Square inches of silicon is a more basic measuring unit than wafer starts, which aggregates variable-sized wafers.

Capacity is a measure of the ability to produce silicon wafers. It is the amount of silicon in square inches that a semiconductor manufacturer can produce. The sum of all the individual manufacturers' capacity is the capacity of the industry.

Capacity is the maximum output that can be obtained from all the PPE in any given time period. Dataquest has found that on the average over the last 15 years, equipment productivity has tended to be around 80 percent of the maximum; therefore:

$$\text{Capacity} = (Pt(E)/0.8) \times PPE$$

where:

Pt(E) = (trend of square inches of silicon)/PPE.

Capacity Utilization

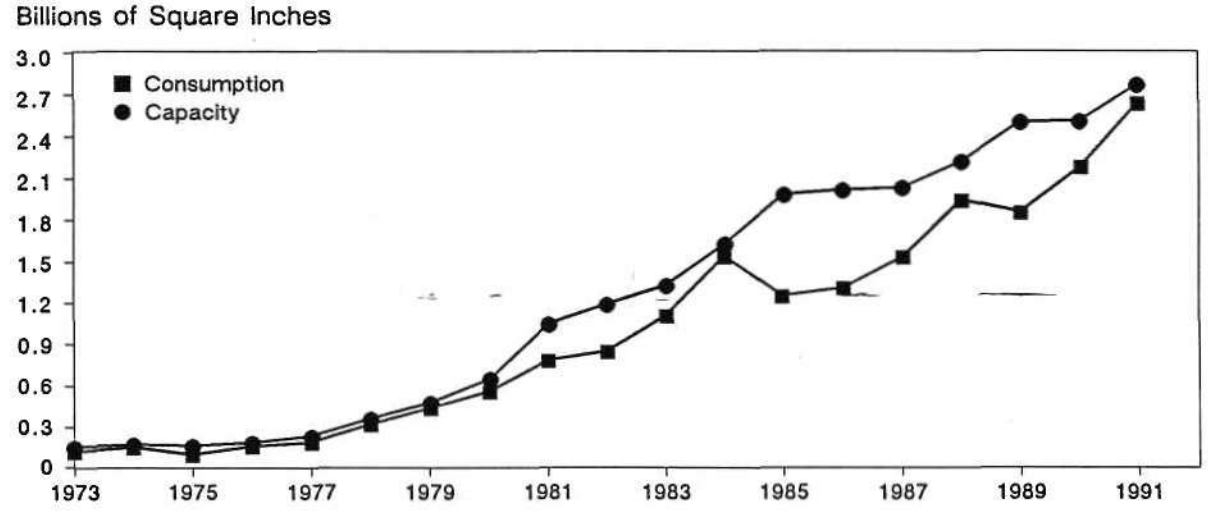
Dataquest has tracked maximum capacity (as defined earlier in this section) and actual square inches of silicon consumed since 1973. Using Dataquest's estimates of future revenue, future silicon consumption, and future capital expenditures, we have been able to forecast both capacity and capacity utilization. Figure 7 shows the growth of silicon consumption and capacity from 1973 through 1992. Figure 8 shows worldwide capacity utilization, historic and forecast.

Capacity utilization reached an all-time low in 1985 and is now increasing toward another peak in 1988. It will decline slightly in 1989, then climb again to near-record heights in 1991.

Manufacturing Capacity

Figure 7

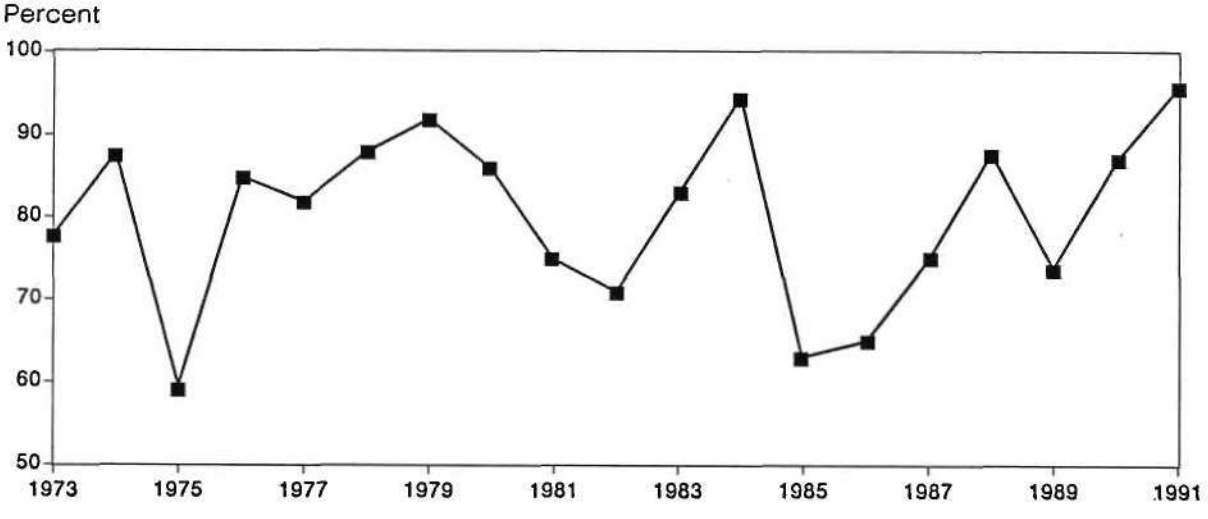
WORLDWIDE SEMICONDUCTOR MANUFACTURING CAPACITY
(Billions of Square Inches)



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

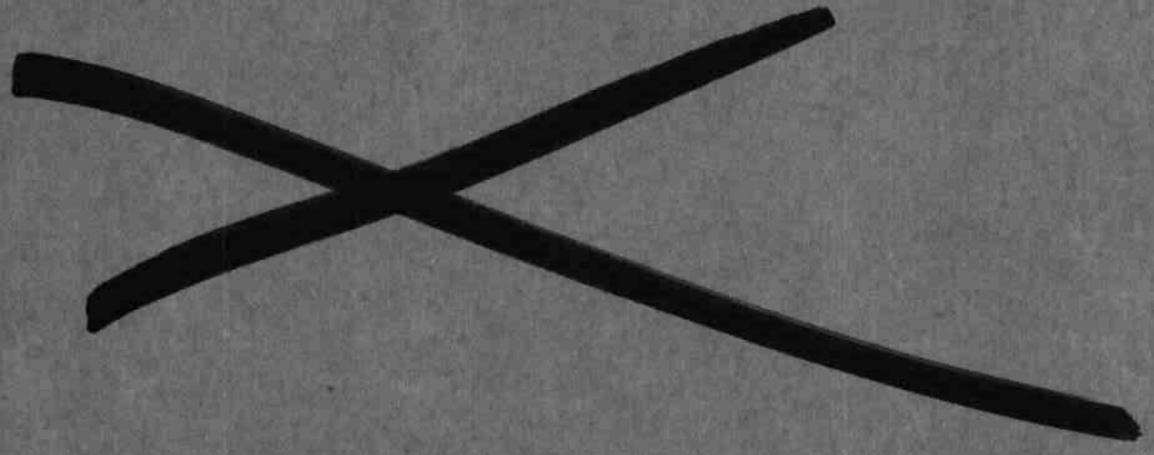
Figure 8

WORLDWIDE CAPACITY UTILIZATION



Source: Dataquest
October 1987

GASES Blue-line



January 13, 1986

SEMICONDUCTOR EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS SERVICE FILING INSTRUCTIONS

Location:	Markets and Technology Binder
Subject:	Gases
Pages:	52
Author:	Peggy Wood
Filing Instructions:	File this service section, dated December 30, 1985, in the Markets and Technology binder behind the Wafer Fabrication Materials tab.

Gases

SUMMARY

In 1984, the gas companies that supply the electronics industry had direct sales of bulk and specialty gases of $205 million to semiconductor manufacturers in the United States. Bulk atmospheric gases (nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen, and argon) represented $155 million (75.6 percent) of that market. Air Products is the leading supplier of bulk gases in the United States with sales of $72 million (46.4 percent), while the Linde division of Union Carbide is the second largest supplier with sales of $42 million (27.1 percent). Airco and Liquid Air are two other primary bulk gas suppliers to the semiconductor industry and have sales of $21 million (13.6 percent) and $17 million (11.0 percent), respectively.

Nitrogen represented approximately 95 percent by volume or 49.5 billion cubic feet (Bcf) of the bulk atmospheric gases sold in the United States in 1984. Hydrogen and oxygen each represented an additional 2 percent by volume, while argon was approximately 1 percent by volume of the total bulk gas consumption by the U.S. semiconductor industry in 1984.

The nitrogen gas market in 1984 represented a substantial portion of the bulk gas supplied to the semiconductor industry in the United States, in both sales ($118.8 million) and volume (49.5 Bcf). The consumption of nitrogen is dependent not only on wafer starts but also on the installed base of equipment in fabrication facilities. Nitrogen flow is used to maintain the integrity of many pieces of processing equipment during times of nonproduction, and thus the nitrogen market exhibits surprising stability during the economic downturns in the semiconductor industry.

Specialty gas sales to semiconductor manufacturers in the United States represented the remaining $50 million (24.4 percent) of the $205 million gas market in 1984. Four major suppliers of specialty gases (in order of market share) include Airco, Linde, Air Products, and Matheson, with market shares ranging from 21 percent to 15 percent. Suppliers with smaller shares include Scientific Gas Products, Liquid Carbonic, and Liquid Air.

The total worldwide market for bulk and specialty gases supplied to the semiconductor industry in 1984 was $430.5 million. As mentioned above, the U.S. market represented $205 million in sales, or 47.6 percent of the world market. In Japan, bulk and specialty gas sales totaled $157 million (36.5 percent), while the gas market in Europe in 1984 was $32 million (7.4 percent). In Rest of World (ROW), the sales of bulk and specialty gases to the semiconductor industry were $36.5 million (8.5 percent). The ROW gas market may seem surprisingly large for the level of semiconductor production in those areas. However, there is a large nitrogen requirement for assembly operations of devices manufactured in the United States and Europe.

Gases

OVERVIEW

In the semiconductor industry, process gases represent one category of consumable materials that are used throughout the fabrication of semiconductor devices, from the growing of single silicon crystals, through the many steps of wafer fabrication, to the final stages of assembly and packaging. Gases are divided into two general categories: bulk atmospheric gases and specialty gases.

Bulk atmospheric gases (BAG) include nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen, and argon. Hydrogen is available in only trace amounts in the atmosphere and thus it is generated through hydrocarbon refining rather than through air separation. However, because it is typically supplied in bulk amounts to semiconductor manufacturers, it is included under the bulk atmospheric gases designation. The designation "bulk" refers specifically to a discrete delivery of gas in its liquid state. These gases typically are delivered as cryogenic liquids because of the efficiency of transportation and storage prior to the vaporization stage from the liquid to a gas at the semiconductor fabrication facility. For the purpose of this study, nitrogen gas provided through direct pipeline delivery, as well as customer on-site nitrogen generation plants, are also considered under the bulk atmospheric gases category even though the supply of nitrogen, in this sense, cannot be classified as discrete.

There are a large number of gases (more than 35) that can be classified as specialty gases. For that reason, a further segmentation of this category is necessary, and is based on the chemical reactivity and functionality of the various specialty gases. For the purposes of this study, the specialty gas segmentation is defined as follows:

- Silicon-precursor gases (i.e., silane, dichlorosilane, trichlorosilane, and silicon tetrachloride),
- Dopants (i.e., arsine, phosphine, and diborane)
- Plasma etchants (i.e., carbon tetrafluoride, as well as numerous other halocarbon and fluorine-based gases)
- Reactant gases (i.e., ammonia, hydrogen chloride, nitrous oxide, and carbon dioxide)
- Atmospheric/purge cylinder gases (i.e., nitrogen, hydrogen, oxygen, argon, and helium)
- Others (i.e., tungsten hexafluoride and germane)

Gases

Specialty gases are used in comparatively smaller volumes than the bulk atmospheric gases and thus are delivered to a semiconductor manufacturer in high-pressure cylinders. Note that nitrogen and other atmospheric gases appear in one of the specialty gas categories as well as under the bulk gas designation. The distinction in this case is that these gases are supplied in gas cylinders rather than in discrete deliveries of bulk liquid. These gases are used primarily for purging certain processing systems and equipment in cases when a semiconductor manufacturer is concerned about possible back-contamination of the house lines of nitrogen, hydrogen, argon, etc.

The following section will review the various bulk and specialty gas categories and summarize their applications in the semiconductor manufacturing process. Table 1 contains a comprehensive list of the gases that are used in semiconductor manufacturing.

Table 1

BULK AND SPECIALTY GASES USED IN SEMICONDUCTOR MANUFACTURING

I. BULK ATMOSPHERIC GASES

Nitrogen, N_2	Hydrogen, H_2
Oxygen, O_2	Argon, Ar

II. SPECIALTY GASES

A. Silicon-Precursor Gases

Silane, SiH_4	Dichlorosilane, SiH_2Cl_2
Trichlorosilane, $SiHCl_3$	Silicon Tetrachloride, $SiCl_4$

B. Dopants

Arsine, AsH_3	Boron Trichloride, BCl_3
Phosphine, PH_3	Boron Trifluoride, BF_3
Diborane, B_2H_6	Phosphorous Pentafluoride, PF_5

(Continued)

Table 1 (Continued)

BULK AND SPECIALTY GASES USED IN SEMICONDUCTOR MANUFACTURING

II. SPECIALTY GASES (Continued)

C. Plasma Etchants

Carbon Tetrafluoride, CF_4	(Halocarbon-14)
Fluoroform, CHF_3	(Halocarbon-23)
Hexafluoroethane, C_2F_6	(Halocarbon-116)
Dichlorodifluoromethane, CCl_2F_2	(Halocarbon-12)
Bromotrifluoromethane, $CBrF_3$	(Halocarbon-13B1)
Chlorotrifluoromethane, $CClF_3$	(Halocarbon-13)
Chloropentafluoroethane, C_2ClF_5	(Halocarbon-115)
Methyl Fluoride, CH_3F	(Halocarbon-41)
Trichlorofluoromethane, CCl_3F	(Halocarbon-11)
Perfluoropropane, C_3F_8	
Chlorine, Cl_2	
Carbon Tetrachloride, CCl_4	
Silicon Tetrafluoride, SiF_4	
Sulphur Hexafluoride, SF_6	
Nitrogen Trifluoride, NF_3	
Others	

D. Reactant Gases

Ammonia, NH_3	Nitrous Oxide, N_2O
Hydrogen Chloride, HCl	Carbon Dioxide, CO_2

E. Atmospheric/Purge Cylinder Gases

Nitrogen, N_2	Oxygen, O_2
Hydrogen, H_2	Argon, Ar
Helium, He	

F. Others

Tungsten Hexafluoride, WF_6	Germane, GeH_4
Others	

Source: DATAQUEST

Gases

APPLICATIONS--BULK ATMOSPHERIC GASES

Nitrogen

Nitrogen is the most widely used gas in the semiconductor industry, in both wafer fabrication as well as assembly operations. Its consumption by volume represents approximately 95 percent of all bulk atmospheric gases used in semiconductor manufacturing. Its primary application is in providing an inert atmosphere for the various wafer processing systems such as epitaxial reactors, chemical vapor deposition (CVD) reactors, and diffusion furnaces. Nitrogen is used as a transportation medium in some wafer processing equipment. In addition, it is used as an inert environment during the exposure of negative photoresist in lithography because of the necessity to minimize competitive oxygen side reactions that can lead to film thickness losses. Nitrogen is also used to maintain the integrity of various pieces of processing equipment, such as furnace banks, even while they are not in direct production use. In some facilities, certain clean stations are equipped with constant flows of nitrogen to maintain ultraclean conditions. Many other pieces of equipment in a fab use nitrogen, including blow guns, pneumatic-actuated valves, spin rinse dryers, dessicators, and cryo pumps used for condensing contaminants in vacuum systems. Because of the emphasis on the use of high-purity materials in the semiconductor industry, nitrogen purity is typically "five nines" (99.999 percent) to "six nines" purity.

Oxygen

Oxygen has the capability to form oxides with all elements except inert gases. In wafer fabrication, it is used to form dielectric and passivation layers of silicon dioxide (SiO_2) on silicon substrates (MOS devices, in particular). It is also used as a component in certain halocarbon plasma etch mixtures such as carbon tetrafluoride (CF_4) and oxygen for the etching of silicon dioxide and silicon nitride layers. Its usage represents only a few percent by volume of the bulk atmospheric gases consumed by the semiconductor industry.

Hydrogen

Hydrogen is most commonly used as an ambient environment for the growth of epitaxial layers. It is also used as a carrier gas during diffusion processes to provide a reducing environment in such reactions as the conversion of boron trichloride to atomic boron.

Gases

Hydrogen is used with oxygen in oxidation processes to form water vapor at oxidation temperatures in what is called a wet-ox (wet oxidation) process. Typically, silicon and oxygen react directly to form silicon dioxide, but the formation of thicker oxide layers requires prohibitive amounts of production time. When silicon reacts with water vapor to produce silicon dioxide and hydrogen, the oxide layer forms at an increased rate due to the relatively fast diffusion of a hydroxyl species. Hydrogen that has been included in the silicon dioxide film is driven off by subsequent heating steps such as diffusion, and densification of the oxide occurs.

Hydrogen consumption, like that of oxygen, represents only a few percent by volume of the bulk atmospheric gases used in the semiconductor industry.

Argon

Argon is used by the semiconductor industry primarily as an inert environment for the growth of single-crystal silicon, and also has applications in sputtering and ion implantation. There is currently a trend toward increased usage of argon in the annealing process for thin gate oxides because of the truly "inert" nonreactive nature of the gas. Argon costs more than nitrogen, which has been the traditional choice for an inert environment in this process. However, the extra expense at such a late stage of fabrication is considered minimal compared with potential device failure, and hence lower yields, caused by chemical contamination during the annealing process.

Argon consumption represents approximately one percent of the total volume of bulk atmospheric gases consumed by the semiconductor industry, and consumption is split between usage in single silicon crystal growth and fabrication processing.

SPECIALTY GASES

Silicon-Precursor Gases

The silicon-precursor gases such as silane, dichlorosilane, trichlorosilane, and silicon tetrachloride are used in epitaxial and chemical vapor deposition (CVD) processes to deposit layers of silicon or silicon compounds (i.e., silicon dioxide, silicon nitride) onto silicon substrates. Silane, in particular, is used in PECVD (plasma-enhanced CVD) for the deposition of amorphous and polysilicon layers. Dichlorosilane is also a primary source for the deposition of polysilicon.

Gases

Silicon epitaxial layers are formed in reactions based on mechanisms of thermal decomposition or reduction by hydrogen, depending on the silicon-precursor reactant gas. Each of the silicon-precursor gases has epitaxial processing advantages and disadvantages, which include the processing temperature range, degree of autodoping, and growth rates. Silane is a pure gaseous source, while silicon trichloride and silicon tetrachloride are both corrosive liquids at room temperature and pressure. Dichlorosilane is in a gaseous state at a pressure of 0.5 atmospheres. The typical epitaxial reactions, temperature ranges, growth rates, and processing advantages and disadvantages are summarized in Table 2.

Table 2

EPITAXIAL SOURCES: ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES

Reactions

Thermal Decomposition	Temperature Range	Growth Rate
$SiH_4 \longrightarrow Si + 2H_2$	1,000 to 1,050° C	0.2 to 1.0 μ/min
$SiH_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow Si + 2HCl$	1,050 to 1,100° C	$\geq$ 1.0 μ/min

Reduction by Hydrogen	Temperature Range	Growth Rate
$SiHCl_3 + H_2 \longrightarrow Si + 3HCl$	1,150 to 1,200° C	1.0 to 10 μ/min
$SiCl_4 + 2H_2 \longrightarrow Si + 4HCl$	1,150 to 1,200° C	0.5 to 1.5 μ/min

Source	Advantages	Disadvantages
SiH_4	Low-temperature deposition Low autodoping	Pyrophoric gas Moderate growth rates
$SiCl_4$	Moderate to high growth rates Easy to obtain good crystal quality on thick layers	Corrosive liquid High-temperature deposition Moderate autodoping
$SiHCl_3$	Very high growth rates Very high purity epitaxial layers Most common source of poly-Si	Corrosive liquid High-temperature deposition Moderate autodoping
SiH_2Cl_2	Properties intermediate between SiH_4 and $SiCl_4$	

Source: DATAQUEST

Gases

A layer of silicon dioxide is formed when silane and oxygen react together in an oxidation process. The other silicon-precursor gases form oxide layers when they undergo hydrolysis (reaction with water) in a moist atmosphere.

Oxidation

$$SiH_4 + O_2 \longrightarrow SiO_2 + 2H_2$$

Hydrolysis

$$SiH_2Cl_2 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow SiO_2 + 2HCl + 2H_2$$
$$SiHCl_3 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow SiO_2 + 3HCl + H_2$$
$$SiCl_4 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow SiO_2 + 4HCl$$

Silane and dichlorosilane both react with ammonia to form passivation layers of silicon nitride.

$$3SiH_4 + 4NH_3 \longrightarrow Si_3N_4 + 12H_2$$
$$3SiH_2Cl_2 + 4NH_3 \longrightarrow Si_3N_4 + 6HCl + 6H_2$$

As mentioned previously, each of the silicon-precursor gases has processing advantages and disadvantages. The safety issue is particularly important with regard to silane as it is a pyrophoric gas, which means that it will burn upon exposure to air. Silicon tetrachloride (siltet) on the other hand, while corrosive, is not classified as toxic nor does it ignite in air. However, it does require the highest operating temperature of all the silicon-precursor gases for epitaxial deposition (1,200° C). In addition, unlike silane, siltet can cause pattern shifts in epitaxial layers due to the formation of chlorine radicals.

The chemical characteristics of dichlorosilane and trichlorosilane fall between those of silane and silicon tetrachloride. Both operate in an intermediate temperature range between silane and siltet. While toxic and corrosive, neither one is considered pyrophoric. In addition, both can cause some degree of pattern shift in epitaxial deposition.

Dopants

Dopants are used as a source of controllable impurities within semiconductor devices. A known concentration and type of impurity (n or p) is introduced into specific regions to modify local electrical properties of the medium. Specifically, an element contributes either an excess hole (p dopant) or electron (n dopant) to the local structure of the crystal lattice, which in turn alters the conductivity of the material. For silicon, the p and n dopants are found in Groups III and V, respectively, of the periodic table. Dopants are available in liquid, solid, and gaseous states. The common gaseous n dopants are arsine and

phosphine, while the common gaseous p dopants include diborane and boron trichloride. Boron trichloride is also used in plasma etching, as well as in chemical vapor deposition of BPSG (borophosphosilicate glass). Dopants are utilized in epitaxial deposition, diffusion, and ion implantation.

In diffusion processes, the dopant gas, which is frequently mixed with nitrogen or hydrogen, is introduced into a high-temperature oven (950-1,280° C) and is incorporated into the substrate by a diffusional mechanism. A dopant concentration gradient in the substrate material is established and the depth of diffusion is controlled by process time and temperature.

The common carrier gases for dopants in diffusion processes are nitrogen and hydrogen, as mentioned previously, although argon and helium are also used. Arsine and phosphine may be supplied to a semiconductor manufacturer as pure gases or as premixed dilutions with these atmospheric gases. Arsine and phosphine premixed with silane are also available. As diborane is extremely unstable in its pure form, and decomposes at a rate of 0.5 percent per day at room temperature, it is always supplied to semiconductor manufacturers diluted with other gases; typically, 15 percent diborane in nitrogen, hydrogen, argon, or helium.

Arsine, phosphine, and diborane gases are all highly poisonous materials. Arsine has a disagreeable garlic-like odor, and inhalation of as little as 0.5 parts per million is considered to be dangerous. Phosphine has an unpleasant odor of decaying fish and will react violently in the presence of an oxygen environment. Diborane is described as having a repulsive, sickly sweet odor, and is spontaneously flammable in air above a temperature of 40° C. However, in the presence of certain contaminants, the ignition of diborane/air mixtures may occur at or even below room temperature. For these reasons and other safety issues, primary manufacturing of these gases is limited to only a handful of companies.

Ion implantation, and more recently neutron transmutation, offer a substantial amount of processing control over diffusion. In ion implantation, the dopant atoms are ionized and accelerated to high energies. The ion beam is directed and focused onto the wafer and the high-energy ions penetrate the surface. Ion implantation offers a great deal of process control because ion current and implant time can both be measured, and thus the number (dosage) of dopant ions incorporated into the material as well as the concentration profile can be determined. In ion implantation, room temperature processing minimizes dopant migration in the substrate, particularly beneath critical gate structures. Because the dopant profile can be controlled, smaller line geometries can be

achieved. In addition to arsine and phosphine, boron trifluoride and phosphorous pentafluoride are also used as dopant source gases in ion implantation.

One disadvantage to ion implantation compared with diffusion is that as the dopant ions collide with the wafer, a significant amount of damage can occur to the crystal lattice. Most of this damage, however, can be later repaired in subsequent annealing steps.

There is an increasing trend away from diffusion and toward ion implantation as a doping procedure for the small-geometry devices because of the greater degree of process control. This trend will have some impact on the gas industry since the diffusion process consumes large amounts of nitrogen in addition to the dopant source gases. However, it is unlikely that diffusion will completely disappear in the future, but rather, will likely remain a standard technique for introducing dopant materials in the larger-geometry devices.

Neutron transmutation doping (NTD) is a new technique for n-type doping that primarily has been limited to high-power applications. In this process, silicon wafers are placed in a nuclear reactor and a stream of thermal neutrons is passed through them. Some of the silicon atoms in the lattice are altered to phosphorous through a nuclear mechanism. While the technique can only form phosphorous-doped materials, it has its advantages in that it can provide an extremely uniform distribution of phosphorous in silicon. In addition, no external source of dopant material is required, as the silicon provides its own. One disadvantage, however, is that access to a nuclear reactor is required. Currently this technique is still quite limited in its applications and production capability. However, it may prove to be a viable alternative for doping semiconductor devices at some future time.

Plasma Etchants

A wide variety of gases, primarily halocarbons, are used in plasma etching. The choice of gases is strongly dependent on the ability of a given mixture of gases to selectively etch one film in the presence of another with a sufficient degree of profile control. The advantages of plasma etch over wet etching techniques include the ability to generate anistropic (i.e., sharp-walled) as well as isotropic (curved-walled) profiles. In addition, loss of photoresist adhesion is minimized in plasma compared with wet etch. Also, because the etching materials are gases, smaller quantities of reagents are used and thus smaller amounts of waste chemicals are generated.

Gases

From a conceptual point of view, plasma etch is a fairly simple process. A highly reactive gaseous species is generated that reacts with the wafer surface to produce a volatile etch product. For most semiconductor materials and metals, the plasma is used as a source of halogen atoms to generate volatile halide etch products. The etching of organic films is best achieved when the plasma provides a source of oxygen atoms to form volatile products such as carbon monoxide (CO).

It is difficult to establish a quantitative relationship to describe the consumption of halocarbon gases in the plasma etch process, since the physical and chemical mechanisms that determine plasma etch efficiency are still not fully understood. For that reason, plasma etch has been described as more of an art than a science, and most process engineers exercise a great deal of freedom in establishing their own unique plasma etch gas mixtures.

Carbon tetrafluoride (CF_4) is probably the most commonly used plasma etch gas. It is an odorless, colorless gas that is stable and nontoxic. It is capable of etching silicon in both its pure gaseous form and when mixed with oxygen. It is also known as tetrafluoromethane, halocarbon-14, or Freon-14. (Freon is a registered trademark of Dupont.) Fluoroform (CHF_3, trifluoromethane, halocarbon-23) and hexafluoroethane (C_2F_6, halocarbon-116) are also used in large quantities. Please refer to Table 1 for a more comprehensive list of plasma etchants. The following sections give examples of the gases that are used to etch silicon and polysilicon, silicon dioxide and nitride, silicides, metals, and photoresist.

Etching of Silicon and Polysilicon

For any given plasma etch mixture, it is very important to be able to selectively etch one film in the presence of another. Selectivity for isotropic etching of silicon and polysilicon in the presence of oxide is very high when using the fluorine-source plasmas (such as CF_4/O_2, SiF_4, SF_6, and NF_3). Typically, anistropic profiles are difficult to achieve when using fluorine sources; however, a high degree of anistropy can be obtained with plasmas that produce chlorine and bromine atoms (Cl_2, Cl_2 C_2F_6, CF_3Cl C_2F_6, Br_2, and CF_3Br).

It is believed that the underlying mechanism for achieving such anistropic profiles may be the physical ion bombardment of the surface. Isotropic profiles are easier to obtain when etching silicon and polysilicon with fluorine sources, and are believed to be due to chemical etching by fluorine atoms.

Gases

Etching of Silicon Dioxide and Nitride

The plasma gases that are used to etch silicon dioxide and nitride in the presence of silicon include CF_4/H_2, CHF_3, and C_2F_6. It has been established empirically that high degrees of selectivity for etching oxide and nitride layers are achieved by the addition of fluorine scavengers such as methane, ethylene, and hydrogen, thereby establishing a fluorine-deficient chemical environment. The underlying chemistry is not clearly understood, and the fine-tuning of feed gases to the plasma discharge is still empirical in nature.

Etching of Silicides

Silicides of titanium (Ti), tantalum (Ta), molybdenum (Mo), and tungsten (W) are commonly etched with a mixture of CF_4 and O_2. Highly volatile silicon tetrafluoride (SiF_4) is produced, as well as moderately volatile metal fluorides. Isotropic as well as anistropic profiles have been reported. We expect this area of plasma etch to continue to receive attention with the increasing trend toward CVD-tungsten silicide applications in MOS devices.

Etching of Metals

In etching metal layers, it is critical that water vapor and oxygen be excluded from the plasma reactor (or possibly scavenged) because of the formation of native metal oxides at the surface. Chlorocarbon and fluorocarbon gases are typically used to etch metal films rather than pure halogens, because of their ability to reduce the native oxides chemically. Nitrogen trifluoride (NF_3) is helpful in increasing selectivity over silicon dioxide films.

Aluminum and chromium do not form volatile metal fluorides, and therefore, etching of these metals is best carried out in plasmas that generate chlorine atoms. Gases that efficiently scavenge oxygen and moisture include boron trichloride (BCl_3) and silicon tetrachloride ($SiCl_4$). In addition, they form radicals that react with the native oxide. Once the native oxide has been removed, aluminum may be etched spontaneously in a pure chlorine environment. Both anistropic and isotropic etches can be achieved depending upon the amount of molecular chlorine in the plasma mixture.

Etching of Photoresist

Photoresist and organic films are often stripped by plasma systems that generate atomic oxygen. Rare gases and CF_4 are added to stabilize the discharge and enhance the reactivity of the organic material. The

discharge produces such etch products as carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and water. If the plasma is rich in atomic oxygen, high selectivities over silicon dioxide, silicon nitride, and metals can be achieved.

Reactant Gases

Reactant gases include ammonia, hydrogen chloride, nitrous oxide, and carbon dioxide. Ammonia is typically used with either silane or dichlorosilane to produce silicon nitride layers in chemical vapor deposition. Silicon nitride films are used as passivation layers or interlayer dielectrics in semiconductor devices. Ammonia is a corrosive, alkaline gas that is considered toxic. It is generally regarded as nonflammable, and has a distinctive pungent odor.

Hydrogen chloride is used to polish and etch wafers prior to deposition steps by removing defects on the wafer surface due to mechanical polishing and handling of the wafer. A significant development in thermal oxidation has been the use of hydrogen chloride in combination with oxygen. Hydrogen chloride is particularly effective in gettering mobile sodium ions and other impurities in the wafer, which in turn helps minimize leakage in the MOS gate threshold voltage. Hydrogen chloride is a colorless, corrosive, nonflammable, acidic gas that has a repulsive odor. Because of its corrosive nature, special attention must be focused to maintain the purity of the gas. In particular, contamination can result from the interaction between hydrogen chloride and the walls of gas cylinders.

Nitrous oxide and carbon dioxide are both used as sources of oxygen in silicon oxide films formed in chemical vapor deposition processes. Nitrous oxide is available as a liquefied gas. It has a sweet odor and is generally used as an anesthetic. It is commonly known as "laughing gas." However, nitrous oxide becomes a strong oxidizing agent at temperatures greater than 300° C. Carbon dioxide is a colorless, odorless, noncombustible gas.

Atmospheric/Purge Cylinder Gases

As mentioned previously, nitrogen and other atmospheric gases are also supplied to semiconductor manufacturers in cylinders as well as in discrete deliveries of bulk liquids. They are classified under the specialty gas designation because they represent cylinder deliveries. These gases are used primarily for purging certain processing systems and equipment in cases when a semiconductor manufacturer is concerned about possible back-contamination of the house lines. In addition, there are

some processes, such as sputtering, that require small amounts of gas, and thus single-cylinder usage is more economical. In the case of sputtering, the process is run under vacuum conditions and argon ions are accelerated in an electric field. Through physical bombardment, the argon ions knock molecules off the surface of a solid target. The ejected material from the target is deposited onto the surface of a wafer, in addition to the walls of the sputtering chamber. Typically, a cylinder of argon can last for three months or more in a sputtering system before it requires replacement.

Other Specialty Gases

In this specialty gas category can be found such gases as tungsten hexafluoride and germane. Germane, GeH_4, is used in epitaxial chemical vapor deposition for the manufacturing of LEDs. Germane must be used with great caution as it is a hemolytic gas, and thus has the ability to dissolve red blood cells.

Tungsten hexafluoride, WF_6, is used as a source of tungsten for the deposition of tungsten silicide as an alternative interconnect material in VLSI devices. The deposition of refractory metal silicides is an area that is receiving increased attention as semiconductor manufacturers design IC devices with higher packing densities and higher device speeds. The problem is that while scaling improves overall device performance, a reduction in device geometries also results in a corresponding reduction of the thickness of interconnect lines. In addition, the larger die sizes used in VLSI devices typically require longer interconnect lines. This combination of thinner and longer interconnect lines results in an increase in the interconnect resistivity and hence, in the RC time delay of the circuit.

Tungsten silicide, as well as other refractory metal silicides based on molybdenum, tantalum, and titanium, have been developed as interconnect materials for VLSI devices because they exhibit considerably reduced resistivities. When these refractory metal silicides are deposited at the gate level on a layer of doped polysilicon, the resulting structure is called a "polycide" shunt. The polycide structure has the advantage of the reduced resistivity of the refractory metal silicide and yet retains the good performance characteristics of polysilicon, such as the stable polysilicon/oxide interface.

The techniques of deposition of refractory metal silicides include sputtering, coevaporation, and chemical vapor deposition. The source materials for molybdenum, titanium, and tungsten are molybdenum hexafluoride, titanium tetrachloride, and tungsten hexafluoride, respectively.

These materials are all liquids at 25° C that have sufficient vapor pressure to allow for source flow to be controlled with a mass flow controller. Tungsten hexafluoride, in particular, is a yellow liquid at room temperature. In its gaseous state, it forms a white mist of hydrogen fluorine gas in moist air. In an inert environment, tungsten hexafluoride is a colorless, odorless gas.

DATAQUEST believes that tungsten silicide is the most widely used refractory metal silicide in the United States. Genus, a CVD manufacturer, was the first to develop a dedicated tungsten silicide reactor for liquid phase chemical vapor deposition, and the success of the Genus reactor has done much to stimulate interest in tungsten hexafluoride as a source material.

SUMMARY OF PHYSICAL CONVERSION FACTORS

Gas, by its very nature, is available in a variety of different volumes and quantities depending on the temperature and pressure of the system. The associated nomenclature used to describe a given amount of gas is likewise as varied. The following section presents a summary of the different units of temperature, pressure, volume, and weight that are commonly used in the gas industry, as well as a set of conversion factors between the different units.

Any amount or quantity of gas has a temperature and pressure dependence that in its simplest form is governed by the Ideal Gas Law, $PV = nRT$. This law states that the pressure of any gas, P (measured in atmospheres), multiplied by its volume, V (liters), is equal to the product of the number of moles of the gas, n, multiplied by the temperature of the system, T (in kelvins), and the universal gas constant, R. One convenient way to remember the appropriate factors is that one mole of gas at one atmosphere pressure at 0° C (273 K) will occupy 22.4 liters.

STP is the designation that is used to indicate standard temperature and pressure; by definition, one atmosphere, 0° C (273 K). The more common specification is that of NTP, which stands for normal temperature and pressure, and corresponds to one atmosphere, 70° F. One atmosphere of pressure can also be defined in units of pounds per square inch; specifically, one atmosphere of pressure is equal to 14.7 psi. An alternative designation is gauge pressure, or psig (pounds per square inch gauge), which does not include ambient pressure conditions. Finally, psia (pounds per square inch absolute) is the sum of gauge pressure as well as the atmospheric pressure, typically 14.7 psi.

Gases

Common units for volume include liters, cubic feet (cf), and cubic meters (cm, not to be confused with centimeters). In some cases, cubic feet will be specifically identified as standard cubic feet (scf) which defines the temperature and pressure values at NTP. However, while "scf" may not be directly stated, in general it is assumed that NTP conditions hold unless otherwise specified. Large quantities of gas are usually described in units of hundred cubic feet (hcf), billion cubic feet (Bcf), or hundred cubic meters (hcm); this last designation is pronounced "hook-ems."

The units of kilograms, pounds, and tons are also used to designate a given quantity of gas under normal temperature and pressure. The definition of a ton, and thus the conversion factor from tons to pounds, takes on a different value in the United States compared with Europe and Japan. In the United States, one ton is equal to 2,000 pounds. In Europe and Japan, the designation of metric tons is assumed, in which case one metric ton is equal to 2,204 pounds (1,000 kg). Table 3 contains a summary of temperature, volume, and weight conversion factors.

Table 3

PHYSICAL CONVERSION FACTORS

Temperature

Fahrenheit (^{O} F) = 1.8 * ^{O} C + 32
Celsius (^{O} C) = (5/9) * (^{O} F-32)
Kelvin (K) = ^{O} C + 273

Volume

1 liter = 1,000 cubic centimeters
1 cubic foot = 28.32 liters
1 cubic meter = 35.31 cubic feet = 1,000 liters
1 hcm = 100 cubic meters = 3,531 cubic feet
100 Bcf = 28.32 million hcm (million hundred cubic meters)

Weight

1 kg = 2.204 pounds
1 ton = 1,000 pounds
1 metric ton = 1,000 kg = 2,204 pounds

Source: DATAQUEST

Gases

GAS COMPANIES SUPPLYING THE SEMICONDUCTOR INDUSTRY

Table 4 contains a listing of the major bulk and specialty gas companies that directly supply the semiconductor industry in the United States, Japan, and Europe. The companies are listed in alphabetical order rather than by regional market share. The individual companies and their regional trading partners and joint ventures will be discussed in the following sections.

Table 4

GAS COMPANIES BY REGION

United States	Japan	Europe
Air Products	Daido Sanso	Air Products
Airco	Iwatani	B.O.C., Ltd.
Liquid Air	Nippon Sanso	L'Air Liquide
Liquid Carbonic	Osaka Sanso	Linde AG
Matheson	Seitetsu Kagaku	Matheson
Scientific Gas Products	Showa Denko	Messer Griesheim
Union Carbide (Linde)	Taiyo Sanso	Union Carbide (Linde)
	Takachiho	
	Teisan	

Source: DATAQUEST

United States

In the United States, there are essentially only four companies that supply bulk atmospheric gases to the semiconductor industry: Air Products & Chemicals, Airco Industrial Gases, Liquid Air Corporation, and the Linde division of Union Carbide Corporation. While all four companies serve the industrial gas market in addition to the semiconductor industry, Air Products and Union Carbide have a diverse range of business operations beyond gases. Air Products supplies chemicals and

engineering services in addition to industrial gases and related equipment. In 1984, Air Products acquired a minority interest in UTI Instruments Company, an analytical instrumentation firm, as well as an interest in Benzing Technologies, a plasma processing equipment company that utilizes nitrogen trifluoride gas to clean CVD reactors. To complement its acquisitions in high-technology firms, Air Products has also formed a joint venture with Celltech, Ltd., one of the leading biotechnology companies in Great Britain.

Union Carbide Corporation is a large, multinational corporation with business divisions in chemicals, plastics, and metals as well as its industrial gas operations. In addition, Union Carbide has polysilicon facilities in the United States and owns KTI Chemicals, Inc., a photoresist company that also supplies pellicles to the semiconductor industry. In 1984, Union Carbide purchased Phoenix Research, a primary manufacturer of high-purity arsine, phosphine, and gaseous hydrogen chloride. Phoenix Research is one of only three companies that has primary arsine manufacturing capability. Air Products and Union Carbide rank first and second in sales of total bulk and specialty gases to the semiconductor industry in the United States with a combined market share of more than 60 percent.

Liquid Air is an operating company that is 90 percent-owned by L'Air Liquide, a French gas company that is the largest industrial gas company in the world. Airco is owned by British Oxygen Company, B.O.C., Ltd., which is headquartered in the United Kingdom.

All four companies provide on-site nitrogen facilities as well as bulk liquid deliveries of nitrogen, oxygen, argon, and hydrogen. Both Air Products and Linde have nitrogen pipeline systems, though the two Air Products networks (Silicon Valley and Chandler, Arizona) are much more extensive than the new Linde system (San Jose, California). Air Products and Linde also have liquid hydrogen manufacturing facilities.

The major specialty gas suppliers to the semiconductor industry include Air Products, Airco, and Linde. Liquid Air's new specialty gases division, Alphagaz, is a recent entrant in the market and currently represents a percent or less of sales to the semiconductor industry. Ideal Gas Products is part of the Alphagaz Specialty Gases Division of Liquid Air.

Other specialty gas companies include Liquid Carbonic, Matheson Gas Products, and Scientific Gas Products. Matheson was purchased in 1983 in a joint venture between Amerigas and the Japanese industrial gas company, Nippon Sanso. Matheson's European operations were purchased at the same time by Union Carbide Corporation. Scientific Gas Products is part of the Ashland Chemical Company, a major supplier of wet chemicals and acids to the semiconductor industry. Ashland Chemical Company, in turn, is part of Ashland Oil.

Gases

Europe

The major gas companies that supply the European semiconductor industry include Air Products, B.O.C., L'Air Liquide, Linde AG, Matheson, Messer Griesheim, and Union Carbide.

Union Carbide does not use the Linde name for its gas operations in Europe because the West German gas company, Linde AG, has rights to worldwide use of the Linde name outside of North America. (Dr. Karl von Linde was the German scientist who developed and patented the technique of cryogenic air separation in 1895.) Linde AG, one of the world leaders in air liquefaction plants, has recently started to focus on the electronic gases market. It has a new specialty gas handling facility outside of Munich, which is expected to be on-line in late 1985.

In addition to its other international facilities, Union Carbide owns the European operations of Matheson (headquartered in Belgium). Union Carbide also has a joint venture with Enichem, a sector of ENI, the Italian state energy group, to market, distribute, and produce industrial and specialty gases in Italy (operational mid-1985). The name of the company is Italiana Gas Industriali S.p.A. (IGI), and it is headquartered in Milan. Union Carbide has plans for a specialty gas manufacturing facility in Scotland; however, final approval for the facility has been postponed for further evaluation in light of the fatal toxic gas leak at the Union Carbide facility in Bhopal, India, in December 1984.

Messer Griesheim is a new entrant in the specialty gas market for the semiconductor industry. It represents a joint venture between Swedish AGA and L'Air Liquide of France.

In the United Kingdom, the major gas suppliers are B.O.C. and Air Products. In France, L'Air Liquide has a large majority of the market, with Air Products and Matheson representing the bulk of the remainder. In West Germany, the major gas suppliers include Air Products, Messer Griesheim, L'Air Liquide, Linde AG, and Union Carbide/Matheson. In Belgium, Air Products and Union Carbide/Matheson are the two major suppliers, while in the Netherlands, there are several gas company suppliers to the Phillips semiconductor operations.

Japan

The major gas suppliers to the Japanese semiconductor industry include Daido Sanso, Iwatani, Nippon Sanso, Osaka Sanso, Seitetsu Kagaku, Showa Denko, Taiyo Sanso, Takachiho, and Teisan. The word "sanso" is the Japanese word for oxygen, and thus many of these companies will be listed in the press or in publications as, for example, Daido or Osaka Oxygen.

Gases

Nippon Sanso is the largest oxygen manufacturer in Japan as well as the largest bulk gas supplier to the Japanese semiconductor industry. Nippon Sanso, as well as Showa Denko, a specialty gas supplier to the semiconductor industry, are both part of the Fuyo group. The Fuyo group is one of the large industrial entities under which many Japanese businesses are organized, and has as its focus the Fuji Bank. Nippon Sanso, in a joint venture with Amerigas, purchased Matheson Gas Products in 1983. In a second joint venture with Amerigas, Nippon Sanso also acquired an interest in Ansutech, a manufacturer of air separation plants in the United States.

Teisan is a major bulk gas supplier in Japan and is owned by L'Air Liquide of France (major stockholder with 64.2 percent of shares). Teisan currently ranks second behind Nippon Sanso in sales of bulk gases to the Japanese semiconductor industry. While Teisan is currently a small player in the specialty gas market, they have plans to promote sales of these gases to the semiconductor and laser industries.

Daido Sanso, a major supplier of oxygen to Japan's steel industry, is experiencing growth in the area of sales of bulk gases to the Japanese semiconductor industry. Air Products is the major stockholder in Daido Sanso with 10 percent ownership of shares. Daido Sanso is part of the Sumitomo group.

Osaka Sanso also supplies bulk atmospheric gases to the Japanese semiconductor industry. B.O.C. of the United Kingdom, through B.O.C. Japan, is the largest stockholder in Osaka Sanso with 23.5 percent of shares. Osaka Sanso is part of the Mitsubishi group.

Taiyo Sanso is a bulk gas supplier to the Japanese semiconductor industry and has Mitsubishi Chemical Industries as its parent company (36.3 percent of shares). Taiyo Sanso is also a member of the Mitsubishi group.

Seitetsu Kagaku is a specialty gas supplier to the Japanese semiconductor industry and is related to Sumitomo Chemical and Nippon Steel through the Sumitomo group.

Takachiho is a specialty gas supplier to the Japanese semiconductor industry and is the trading partner of Synthatron, a New Jersey-based specialty gas manufacturer. Synthatron is a primary manufacturer of arsine, and is a major supplier of dopants to the Japanese market.

Iwatani & Co., Ltd., has formed a joint venture with Union Carbide under the name Iwatani Industrial Gases (IIG) to produce helium, hydrogen, argon, nitrogen, and specialty gases for the Japanese market. The

facilities are expected to be operational by late 1985, and technology transfer has already been underway for some time. Union Carbide's commitment under the joint venture was more than $10 million, and it will take up to 25 percent in the venture over the next few years. Iwatani & Co. is part of the Sanwa group that has the Sanwa Bank as its focus.

In summary, the major bulk gas suppliers for Japan's semiconductor industry are Nippon Sanso and Teisan with approximately 70 percent of the market. Daido Sanso, Osaka Sanso, and Taiyo Sanso combined represent an additional 24 percent or so of bulk gas sales. In the specialty gas market, Nippon Sanso and Seitetsu are identified as major suppliers to the semiconductor industry, while Showa Denko, Teisan, and Takachiho maintain a smaller portion of market share. Iwatani did not represent any significant share of the specialty gas market in 1985.

ROW

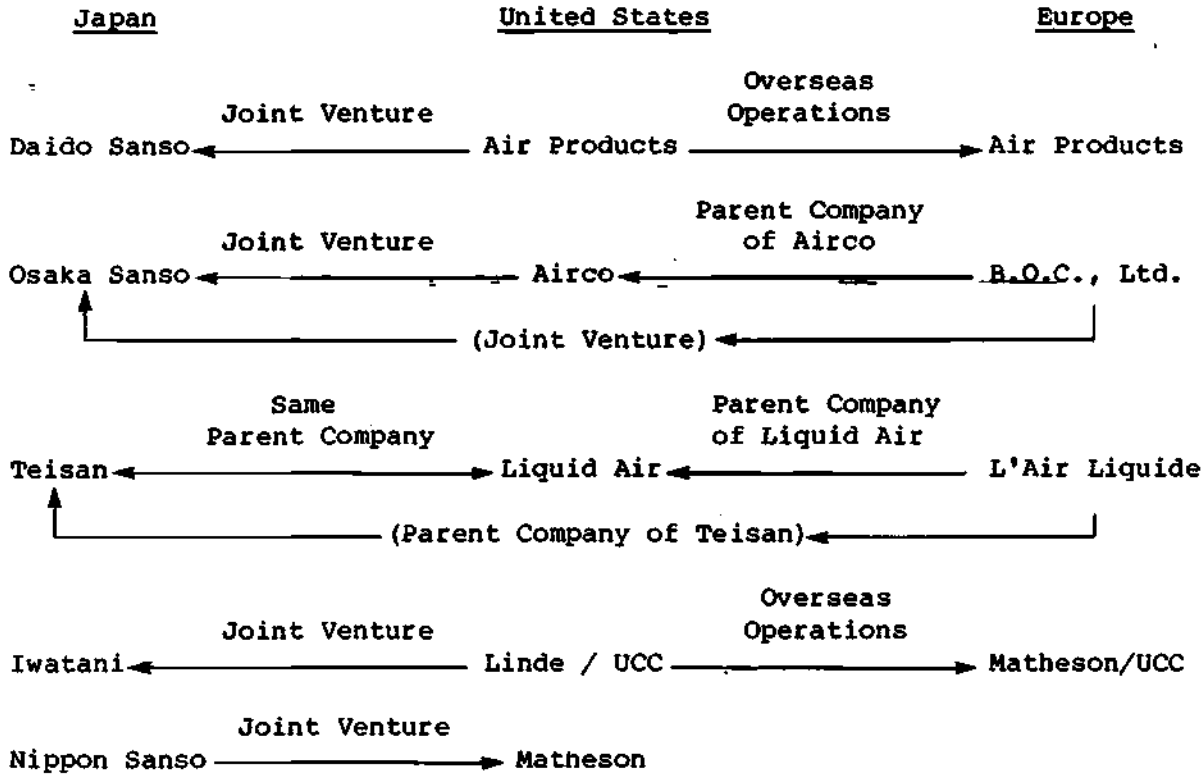
The countries with significant semiconductor fabrication under the Rest of World heading include South Korea and Taiwan, while Malaysia, Hong Kong, and Singapore have substantial assembly operations. The major gas suppliers include B.O.C., L'Air Liquide, Nippon Sanso, and Union Carbide either through direct sales or joint venture agreements. Union Gas Co. in Korea is part of the Union Carbide operations, while, for example, Hong Kong Oxygen represents a joint venture between B.O.C. and L'Air Liquide. Because of the large volume of assembly that is conducted in Pacific Rim countries, nitrogen consumption is disproportionately larger than would be expected from nitrogen requirements in semiconductor fabrication operations.

Gas Company Interrelationships

It is clear that while there are half a dozen or more gas companies that supply the semiconductor industry in each of the various regions of the world, there is a large degree of interrelations between the various companies. Two of the major gas companies in the United States, Airco and Liquid Air, are owned by their European counterparts, B.O.C. and L'Air Liquide, respectively. The remaining two major gas companies in the United States, Air Products and Union Carbide, both have major operations established in Western Europe. In Japan, it has been particularly important for the major American and European gas companies to have a Japanese firm as a trading partner or co-joint venturer because of the difficulty of establishing a presence in the Japanese market. Table 5 presents a summary of the regional interrelationships that exist between the major gas suppliers to the worldwide semiconductor industry.

Table 5

GAS COMPANY INTERRELATIONSHIPS



Source: DATAQUEST

BULK ATMOSPHERIC GAS MANUFACTURING

Nitrogen, Oxygen, and Argon

Nitrogen, oxygen, and argon are obtained directly from the air by a technique of cryogenic air separation and distillation. Essentially, the process entails cooling air close to its liquefaction point and then utilizing the physical difference in volatilities of components of air to

distill and separate them. Table 6 contains a list of the fixed components of air by percent composition, as well as the variable components. The fixed components are numbered (in parentheses) in decreasing order of volatility. Those gases in the same volatility range will become impurities of one another. Therefore, helium and neon will sometimes be found in nitrogen, but not in oxygen or argon. Similarly, krypton and xenon will always occur in oxygen, but not in argon or nitrogen. The extent to which any components become impurities in the others is dependent on the separation capacity of the distillation system.

Table 6

COMPONENTS OF THE ATMOSPHERE

Gas	Order of Volatility	Symbol	Concentration-Dry Basis Volume %	ppm
Fixed				
Nitrogen	(3)	N_2	78.084	
Oxygen	(5)	O_2	20.9476	
Argon	(4)	Ar	0.934	
Neon	(2)	Ne		18.18
Helium	(1)	He		5.24
Krypton	(6)	Kr		1.14
Xenon	(7)	Xe		0.087
Variable				
Carbon Dioxide		CO_2		300 to 400
Nitrous Oxide		N_2O		0.5
Nitrogen Dioxide		NO_2		0 to 0.02
Water		H_2O	1.25*	
Hydrogen		H_2		0.5 Typ
Carbon Monoxide		CO		1 Typ
Methane		CH_4		2 Typ
Ethane		C_2H_6		<0.1 Typ
Other Hydrocarbons		C_xH_y		<0.1 Typ

*At 70° F and 50 percent relative humidity

Source: Linde Division
Union Carbide Corporation

It is interesting to note that the level of the variable components of the air may differ, depending on the geographical location of a given air separation plant because of the local levels of smog and humidity. Additional purification of the bulk atmospheric gases is necessary in areas that have substandard air quality.

Once the different components of air have been separated, the cryogenic liquids are transported to a customer's site from the gas company's air separation facility in specially equipped tank trucks and tube trailers. Upon arrival at a semiconductor facility, the liquid is transferred to cryogenic storage tanks located "on the pad," close to the vaporization equipment. The transportation and storage advantages associated with cryogenic liquids are clearly demonstrated by the fact that a single volume of liquid nitrogen upon vaporization translates to an equivalent of approximately 750 volumes of nitrogen gas.

Atmospheric gases obtained from air separation facilities, such as nitrogen, oxygen, and argon, are available to semiconductor manufacturers in discrete deliveries of bulk liquid. Other alternative delivery modes for nitrogen include multicustomer nitrogen gas pipeline networks, as well as on-site nitrogen generation facilities at a semiconductor manufacturing location. It is essentially not economical to produce any gas other than nitrogen on-site because of insufficient volume demand. The alternative modes of nitrogen delivery will be discussed in detail in a later section.

Hydrogen

Hydrogen is obtained in the industrial processes of thermal cracking or steam reforming of hydrocarbons (i.e., natural gas) or in the reduction of water by carbon. The hydrogen is liquefied and transported in the same manner as the other bulk atmospheric gases.

Bulk Gas Manufacturers--United States

Gas companies in the United States that supply bulk atmospheric gases to semiconductor manufacturers include Air Products, Airco, Liquid Air, and the Linde division of Union Carbide. DATAQUEST estimates that these four companies supply approximately 98 percent of bulk gases, by sales, to the semiconductor industry. All four major players in this market provide on-site nitrogen generation facilities to semiconductor manufacturers. Air Products has two established multicustomer pipeline networks, and Union Carbide brought a new multicustomer pipeline system on-line in early 1985. There are relatively few companies that comprise

the remaining 1 to 2 percent of the bulk gas market in the United States; companies in this category include Liquid Carbonic and MG Industries (Scientific Gases Division).

Of the four major suppliers to the semiconductor industry, only Air Products and Union Carbide have liquid hydrogen manufacturing facilities. Union Carbide has one manufacturing plant in Ontario, California, another in Niagara Falls, New York, and a third in Ashtabula, Ohio. Air Products' hydrogen facilities are in the New Orleans area, a plant in the Great Lakes region, another near Los Angeles, and a new facility planned for Sacramento, California. Since Air Products does not sell any of its hydrogen to competitors, other gas companies must purchase the liquid hydrogen that they supply to semiconductor manufacturers from Union Carbide.

SPECIALTY GAS MANUFACTURING

There are a large number of specialty gases (more than 35) used in semiconductor manufacturing. While all specialty gas companies essentially supply the entire range of gases, it is interesting to note that no one company has complete manufacturing capability. Therefore, in the specialty gas industry, it is necessary that companies sell product between themselves. It is therefore possible for a gas manufactured by one company to be purchased, remixed, filtered, and repackaged by another company, and in some cases exchange hands a second time, before finally being sold to a semiconductor manufacturer. For that reason, it is very difficult to establish the exact size of the specialty gas market from within the industry because of possible double- and triple-counting of product. As mentioned, many of the specialty gases are remixed to provide different dilution mixtures with gases such as nitrogen, argon, hydrogen, or helium. This can also be a source of confusion when following the distribution network of gas produced by primary manufacturers to their final semiconductor manufacturing destination.

Figure 1 presents a schematic of different possible distribution networks for specialty gases from a primary manufacturer to a final destination at a semiconductor manufacturing facility. For example, Synthatron, a primary manufacturer of arsine, may supply one or more gas companies in the United States with the dopant. Typically, these gas companies would refilter and repackage the material, and sell the product directly to a semiconductor manufacturer. However, they may also sell some amount of the gas to another gas company in the United States, possibly to a joint venture partner, or to their overseas gas operations. In addition, Synthatron also supplies dopant directly to foreign gas companies, who in turn supply foreign semiconductor fabrication facilities.

Gases

Silicon-Precursor Gases

Union Carbide is a leading supplier of silicon-precursor gases, since it is the only company in the United States with primary manufacturing capability for silane, dichlorosilane, trichlorosilane, and silicon tetrachloride. Other basic manufacturers in one or more of the silicon-precursor gases include Air Products, Matheson, Scientific Gas Products, and Synthatron. In addition, Texas Instruments, a semiconductor manufacturer, is also a primary manufacturer of silicon tetrachloride.

Dopants

One example of limited primary manufacturing capability is that of the gaseous dopants. There are only three primary manufacturers of arsine, all located in the United States: Matheson Gas Products, Phoenix Research (purchased in 1984 by Union Carbide), and Synthatron. While Matheson and Phoenix Research are also primary manufacturers of phosphine, Synthatron obtains low-grade phosphine from American Cyanamid.

DATAQUEST believes that Europe presently has no arsine and phosphine manufacturing capability, nor does Japan. DATAQUEST estimates that in 1984, Synthatron supplied essentially all of Europe's arsine/phosphine needs, and approximately 70 percent of Japan's requirements. It is believed that Japan may be establishing dopant manufacturing capability in arsine and phosphine in the near future.

In addition, there is only one primary manufacturer in the United States for diborane, Callery Chemical Company (Callery, PA). Callery has no direct sales to semiconductor manufacturers, but sells its product to the different gas companies who then purify and repackage it for semiconductor industry consumption. Some primary manufacturing capability of diborane does exist in Europe and Japan; however, it is unclear what amount of diborane is exported from the United States to these regions.

Plasma Etchants

Carbon tetrafluoride is the gas that is most commonly used in the plasma etching process. Both Linde and Air Products have primary manufacturing capability for carbon tetrafluoride. Other suppliers obtain carbon tetrafluoride from Dupont and then filter, purify, and repackage the material prior to providing it to a semiconductor manufacturer.

Gases

Matheson and Scientific Gas Products are both licensed by LFE Corporation to manufacture proprietary plasma etchant gas mixtures. A 35 percent royalty is charged on the etchant mixtures which are protected under a "composition of matter" patent.

In addition to Air Products, Linde, Matheson, and Scientific Gas Products, other manufacturers of plasma etch gases include Liquid Carbonic and Synthatron.

Air Products, in particular, has a wide range of primary manufacturing capability in fluorine-based gases, including nitrogen trifluoride and tungsten hexafluoride. These two gases have received a good deal of attention recently. Nitrogen trifluoride is used in a system developed by Benzing Technologies to clean horizontal-tube LPCVD (low pressure CVD) reactors. Tungsten hexafluoride, which is classified in the "Other Specialty Gases" category, is used in a CVD reactor system developed by Genus for the deposition of tungsten silicide.

Reactant Gases

DATAQUEST believes that none of the gas suppliers has primary manufacturing capability for gaseous hydrogen chloride, except Union Carbide through its recent acquisition of Phoenix Research. The gas suppliers typically purchase liquid hydrochloric acid and then repackage the material as a gas under high-pressure conditions.

The emphasis on ultrahigh-purity materials has led gas suppliers to develop special passivated cylinders to minimize contamination and particulate generation, particularly for the corrosive gases. Airco was the first to introduce aluminum cylinders for electronic gases under the "Spectra Seal" name. Airco later announced a line of specially prepared carbon steel cylinder linings, under the "Spectra Steel" name, for those materials that are chemically incompatible with an aluminum cylinder. This type of cylinder is particularly effective in maintaining purity levels for hydrogen chloride.

Atmospheric/Purge Cylinder Gases

The manufacturing process for obtaining nitrogen, oxygen, argon, and hydrogen has been discussed in previous sections. Helium is a fixed component in air separation; however, it is usually obtained in concentration from gas reserves located in some natural gas fields. Helium is used as an inert carrier gas in some applications in semiconductor processing. However, helium is primarily used in the electronics industry as an inert carrier gas for dopants in the production of glasses in fiber optics.

Other Specialty Gases

DATAQUEST believes that Air Products is the only primary manufacturer of tungsten hexafluoride in the United States. Tungsten hexafluoride is used as a source of tungsten for tungsten silicide deposition. Genus was the first to develop a dedicated tungsten silicide reactor for liquid phase chemical vapor deposition. Genus is also a supplier of high-purity, moisture-free tungsten hexafluoride for exclusive use in its reactor system. The Japanese have traditionally used molybdenum hexafluoride as a source material for molybdenum silicide, but with the advent of the Genus reactor, the Japanese market has shifted toward the use of tungsten hexafluoride as a source material in refractory metal silicide deposition.

Airco and Matheson are primary suppliers of germane to the semiconductor industry.

SAFETY ISSUES

The previous section has emphasized the manufacturing capability for specialty gases of the various gas suppliers. There are relatively few sites of primary manufacturing of specialty gases in the United States. One reason is that due to the toxic and corrosive nature of most of the specialty gases, it is a very involved, costly procedure to certify manufacturing facilities to the safety standards of local and state officials, the EPA (Environmental Protection Agency), and OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Agency). In light of the December 1984 toxic gas leak at the Union Carbide facility in Bhopal, India, industrial development agencies around the world are quite concerned about potentially hazardous leaks that might arise at a specialty gas manufacturing plant. One example of the fallout from Bhopal is that plans for a Union Carbide specialty gas facility in Scotland have been postponed until further evaluation can be completed.

Specialty gas manufacturers are very aware of the safety issues surrounding their products and have gone to special efforts to ensure reliable handling of the gases. Linde has worked jointly with Veriflow Corporation in the development and testing of a new remote-controlled valve for the control of hazardous gases. This new valve would allow personnel to stay at a distance to safely handle flammable, toxic, or corrosive gases under high pressure. It includes a special flow-limiting restrictor in the outlet to prevent the chance of uncontrollable gas flow in the event of a leak downstream. It also maintains a secondary self-sealing system to prevent leaks to the atmosphere in case the primary outlet becomes disconnected with the valve left open. The cost of the new valve will be included as part of the cylinder rental charge.

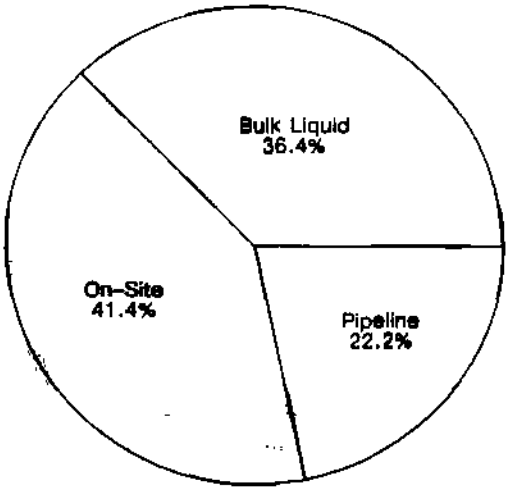
While safety is foremost in the minds of many semiconductor manufacturers, the associated cost for including the new Linde valve on specialty gas cylinders will be a factor of six to seven times the standard cylinder charge, and this may deter widespread usage in the industry.

NITROGEN DELIVERY SYSTEMS

There are three different modes of delivering high-purity nitrogen to a semiconductor fabrication facility: an on-site air separation plant, a single-customer or multicustomer pipeline network, and merchant deliveries of liquid nitrogen. DATAQUEST estimates that approximately 49.5 billion cubic feet (Bcf) of nitrogen were supplied to the semiconductor industry in the United States in 1984. The volume percentage associated with each type of delivery mode is presented in Figure 2. For the purpose of this study, only multicustomer pipeline systems are considered under the pipeline category. Single-customer pipelines are considered delivery extensions of dedicated merchant air separation facilities, and thus in some ways are analogous to customer on-site facilities. Each of the three delivery modes has economic and logistical advantages and disadvantages which will be reviewed in the following sections. In particular, such issues as the amount of nitrogen required, the location of the fabrication facility, and the existing infrastructure must be considered in each case.

Figure 2

NITROGEN DELIVERY MODE BY VOLUME--UNITED STATES
1984



Volume—49.5 Bcf

Source: DATAQUEST

On-Site Nitrogen Generation Plants

Semiconductor manufacturers consider an on-site nitrogen generation facility when sufficiently large volumes of nitrogen are required for a given fabrication facility. This occurs when a new facility with large nitrogen consumption requirements comes on-line, or when the consumption of nitrogen has grown beyond the point of economic justification for merchant delivery of liquid nitrogen. Because the consumption rate of nitrogen is substantially larger than that of the other bulk gases, it is the only gas that is economical for a semiconductor manufacturer to produce on-site. One exception, however, is a Texas Instruments facility in Dallas that is supplied via a single-customer pipeline network with high-purity nitrogen, oxygen, argon, and hydrogen generated at a nearby plant operated by Liquid Air.

Typically, the gas company responsible for installation of the plant retains ownership and supervises its operation. There are several reasons why this is the case. First, a semiconductor manufacturer has other more pressing demands for capital expenditure than a nitrogen generation plant. In addition, personnel at a fabrication facility are usually not knowledgable about gas production or maintenance of such a facility. Finally, if it becomes necessary to expand nitrogen capacity, existing plant equipment will have to be removed and a larger facility installed in its place, since smaller plants cannot be directly upgraded.

There are several factors that influence the choice for on-site nitrogen generation, but foremost is the wafer production level, and thus nitrogen consumption rate, of a fabrication facility. However, nitrogen consumption in a fab depends on more than just wafer starts, since a certain amount of nitrogen is always required to maintain the processing equipment and environment even when wafer production levels drop. Typically in the industry, it is estimated that 500 to 700 cubic feet of nitrogen are consumed per wafer start, on the average. This figure, which includes both fabrication and maintenance requirements, allows one to calculate the nitrogen consumption rate of a fabrication facility on the basis of wafer starts. If wafer production levels at a given facility decrease, however, the reduction in nitrogen will not drop at the same rate because of the amount of gas that is needed to maintain the integrity of the processing environment.

The consumption rate of nitrogen that economically justifies conversion to an on-site facility is 22,000 to 26,000 cubic feet/hour. This corresponds to approximately 25,000 to 30,000 wafer starts/month if one assumes an average consumption rate of 625 cubic feet of nitrogen/wafer start for 720 hours/month of production operation. By the time a semiconductor manufacturer has reached a nitrogen consumption rate of 28,000 to 30,000 cubic feet/hour (32,000 to 35,000 wafer starts/month), the conversion to on-site nitrogen generation has usually been made.

Several issues that may affect a lower break-even point for the conversion to an on-site facility include the location of the fabrication facility and the condition of the existing infrastructure. If a semiconductor fab is located in an area that is quite a distance from a merchant source of liquid nitrogen, the additional costs for transporting bulk liquids may become prohibitive when compared with the alternative of on-site nitrogen generation. In addition, if the existing infrastructure (communications and transportation network) is poor, regular and reliable delivery of bulk liquid nitrogen may not be possible, and again, on-site nitrogen generation may be the only alternative. On-site plants at semiconductor fabrication locations have been identified in Israel, Malaysia, and South Korea. In these cases, the infrastructure that would allow for merchant delivery of liquid nitrogen is poor. At the facility in Israel, oxygen and hydrogen as well as nitrogen are produced on-site, which is unusual since these gases are required in much smaller volumes than nitrogen in the semiconductor processing environment. Hydrogen, oxygen, and argon are rarely produced on-site in the United States because the existing infrastructure is sufficient to make bulk delivery economically viable.

The cost to a semiconductor manufacturer for on-site nitrogen is approximately $0.10 to $0.12/hundred cubic feet (hcf) for an average-size facility (typically 30,000 to 80,000 cubic feet/hour). For a larger facility, the cost may be more like $0.08 to $0.09/hcf. The charge usually includes a regular fixed fee that covers the equipment and facility and the cost of maintaining the plant, as well as the gas itself.

The customer typically pays the power costs for the generation of nitrogen; this can vary considerably, depending on the source of electricity. For example, the energy costs in the Pacific Northwest are several mils per kW-hour (about $0.002 to 0.003/kW-hour) up to $0.01 to $0.02/kW-hour because of the abundant source of cheap hydroelectric power. In the San Francisco Bay Area, however, Pacific Gas & Electric charges $0.07 to $0.10/kW-hour, which makes the overall cost of a customer on-site generation plant prohibitive when compared with the existing pipeline network and liquid bulk deliveries. (Certain discounts on energy rates apply for large-volume users that maintain power consumption at a specified capacity.)

The amount of energy required to generate 100 cubic feet of nitrogen (in liquid form) is approximately 3 kW-hours, some of which may be recovered from heat exchangers when the liquid is vaporized. Because there is such a wide range in the cost of power, it is very difficult to establish an average selling price for on-site nitrogen that includes these additional on-site fees. For the purpose of this study, the average selling price of nitrogen is reported as $0.11/hcf, with the understanding that power charges are not included.

The current short-term trend is that the number of on-site locations will increase, and that existing locations will continue to add nitrogen generation capacity. However, several industry sources believe that the long-term trend will be away from the large fabrication facilities toward small production centers, and thus the number of new on-site locations will drop dramatically. One disadvantage to on-site nitrogen production that should be mentioned is that regardless of the amount of nitrogen produced at the facility, the fixed fee payments are unaffected. In an economic downturn, such as the industry has recently endured, those fees can become an economic liability for facilities that are required to cut back or shut down production lines.

DATAQUEST estimates that there are more than 50 semiconductor fab locations in the United States that have on-site nitrogen generation facilities, and they account for 20.5 Bcf, or 41.4 percent of total nitrogen consumption in 1984. The major gas companies that provide on-site nitrogen generation facilities in the United States include Air Products, Airco, Liquid Air, and the Linde division of Union Carbide.

On-site nitrogen generation facilities are also found at more than a dozen Japanese semiconductor facilities. Several that have been identified include Fujitsu (Aizu), Matsushita (Arai), Motorola (Aizu), Oki (Miyazaki), a Sharp facility, and Toshiba (Iwate). The companies that supply the nitrogen generation systems include Daido Sanso, Nippon Sanso, Osaka Sanso, and Teisan.

In the European gas market, several on-site nitrogen generation facilities have been identified in the United Kingdom; generator suppliers for these sites include Air Products, B.O.C., and Petrocarbon (a British supplier of air separation facilities). Limited activity in the area of on-site nitrogen generation plants has also been reported in France and West Germany. Nitrogen on-sites have also been identified in Israel, South Korea, Malaysia, and Singapore. Currently, there is no information available regarding the volume percentage that is accounted for by this mode of nitrogen delivery in Europe, Japan, or countries in ROW.

Pipeline Delivery of Nitrogen

Gaseous nitrogen is supplied to semiconductor facilities via single-customer and multicustomer pipeline networks. For the purpose of this study, however, only multicustomer pipeline systems are considered under the pipeline designation. Single-customer pipelines are considered delivery extensions of dedicated merchant air separation facilities, and thus are analogous to customer on-site facilities.

At this time, there are only three multicustomer pipeline systems that supply semiconductor manufacturers in the United States with nitrogen. While single-customer pipelines exist in Europe as well as Japan, there are currently no multicustomer pipeline networks in those regions. The following discussion, therefore, is limited to the two Air Products pipelines located in the Silicon Valley and Chandler, Arizona, and the new Linde pipeline, located in San Jose, California.

The driving force for establishing a multicustomer pipeline system is the strategic location of a network that has the ability to serve an expanding geographical region of semiconductor production activity. Air Products established its first pipeline system in 1971, located in the Silicon Valley. Over the years, the low-carbon steel pipeline has been expanded to a system that is 25 miles long, including a recent 3-mile extension that is made of electropolished stainless steel. The pipeline network supplies high-purity gaseous nitrogen to more than 45 semiconductor manufacturers in the Silicon Valley, from Mountain View to San Jose, with the recent 3-mile extension into Milpitas. Several major manufacturers that are hooked up to the Air Products' nitrogen pipeline network include Advanced Micro Devices, Fairchild, Hewlett-Packard, Intel, Monolithic Memories, and National Semiconductor. A second Air Products pipeline, also low-carbon steel, was established in Chandler, Arizona, in the late 1970s. It is approximately 25 miles long and serves approximately 10 semiconductor manufacturers, including GTE, General Instruments, Intel, and Motorola.

The Linde division of Union Carbide brought a high-purity nitrogen pipeline system on-line in early 1985. It is a two-mile long stainless steel system that serves the International Business Park in San Jose. There are currently four semiconductor manufacturers that are being supplied with nitrogen from the Linde pipeline network. Linde chose a stainless steel pipeline system rather than low carbon steel because of its ability to provide an ultrahigh-purity, low-contaminant environment for gaseous nitrogen delivery.

DATAQUEST estimates that the volume of nitrogen supplied by multicustomer pipeline networks in the United States was approximately 11.0 Bcf, or 22.2 percent of the total nitrogen volume consumed by semiconductor manufacturers in 1984. This volume is totally attributable to the Air Products' pipeline systems in the Silicon Valley and in Chandler, Arizona, since the Linde pipeline did not come on-line until early 1985. (The Silicon Valley pipeline accounted for 80 percent, or 8.8 Bcf, while the Chandler network supplied the remaining 20 percent, or 2.2 Bcf, of pipeline-delivered nitrogen.) Even for pipeline nitrogen volumes in 1985, the Linde pipeline's contribution to the total amount supplied by multicustomer pipeline systems will be negligible. The cost for nitrogen provided by the pipeline systems varies from $0.20 to $0.24/hcf, with an average selling price of $0.22/hcf.

Merchant Liquid Nitrogen Delivery

Liquid nitrogen is delivered via tube trailers and tanker trucks to cryogenic holding tanks located "on the pad" at semiconductor manufacturing facilities. This is the only option available for nitrogen supply when a semiconductor manufacturer is not strategically located to take advantage of a multicustomer pipeline system, or if the account is of insufficient size to warrant on-site nitrogen generation. The overwhelming advantage for shipping discrete amounts of bulk liquid rather than gaseous nitrogen is that a single volume of liquid corresponds to an equivalent of 750 volumes of gas after vaporization. Vaporizers are installed on the pad by the gas supplier for on-site conversion from liquid to gas as needed.

The pricing system for merchant delivery of liquid nitrogen can vary considerably depending on the size of the account and the distance of the fab facility from vendor-owned air-separation plants. The basic cost of bulk liquid nitrogen delivery includes the power costs to liquefy and separate out the nitrogen, transportation costs (based on round-trip mileage) to move a discrete volume of liquid by tube trailer to a fabrication facility, as well as a hook-up charge. In addition, there is typically an escalation clause built into the contracts for liquid nitrogen delivery that increases the price of nitrogen as time goes on. (For example, pricing for bulk liquids can in some cases follow the Producer Price Index for Industrial Commodities set by the Bureau of Labor Statistics.) However, as the account grows, appropriate reductions in price are also considered. Thus, taking these many factors into account, the price of bulk liquid nitrogen delivered to a semiconductor manufacturer can vary from as low as $0.17 to $0.19/hcf to $0.50 to $0.60/hcf. In some cases, liquid nitrogen prices in the United States are even greater than $1.00/hcf because of the size/distance factors.

While prices vary considerably, an average selling price of $0.40/hcf is assumed in this study. This cost factor includes delivery of the bulk liquid as well as the leasing fee for vaporization equipment and storage tanks. Because of very aggressive pricing practices within the gas industry for semiconductor manufacturer accounts, the pricing distribution for liquid nitrogen will continue to span a wide range of values in the future.

The merchant liquid nitrogen delivery prices can be higher overall than either pipeline delivery or on-site generation, even when power costs are included. One reason is that some of the power cost for air liquefaction and separation can be recovered through heat exchange equipment when the liquid is vaporized to a gas. The gas company is

responsible for the operation of customer on-site facilities, as well as their own plants, and thus can pass the savings in power costs directly on to the semiconductor manufacturer through prices for on-site nitrogen and pipeline-delivered nitrogen. However, with liquid nitrogen delivery, the semiconductor manufacturer is paying for a liquid supply of nitrogen, and thus the cost up front does not reflect any eventual recovery of power charges that may be generated through vaporization.

DATAQUEST estimates that the volume of nitrogen supplied to semiconductor manufacturers in the United States in 1984 from bulk liquid merchant deliveries was 18.0 Bcf, which corresponds to 36.4 percent of the total nitrogen volume consumption.

MARKET ANALYSIS

Worldwide Semiconductor Gas Market

Table 7 presents the worldwide semiconductor gas market in 1984 by regional sales of bulk and specialty gases.

Table 7

1984 WORLDWIDE SEMICONDUCTOR GAS MARKET

Region	Bulk Atmospheric Gases $M	Bulk Atmospheric Gases Percent	Specialty Gases $M	Specialty Gases Percent	Total $M	Total Percent
United States	$155.0	46.9%	$ 50.0	50.0%	$205.0	47.6%
Japan	115.0	34.8	42.0	42.0	157.0	36.5
Europe	25.0	7.6	7.0	7.0	32.0	7.4
ROW	35.5	10.7	1.0	1.0	36.5	8.5
Total	$330.5	100.0%	$100.0	100.0%	$430.5	100.0%

Source: DATAQUEST

DATAQUEST believes that specialty gas costs for Japan, Europe, and the ROW are proportionately higher than for the United States because regional gas suppliers do not have full specialty gas manufacturing capability. Thus it is necessary for a variety of different gases to be shipped in cylinders to these areas. For example, DATAQUEST believes that Europe has no dopant manufacturing capability, and that Japan as well may still not have established primary dopant manufacturing. The interrelationships between the various gas companies in different regions of the world provide the necessary distribution networks for such gases.

Table 8 presents the total bulk gas market and the portion of the market represented by nitrogen (revenues, volumes, and average selling prices) for the different regions of the world. Nitrogen is singled out because it is consumed by the semiconductor industry in substantially larger volumes than any of the other gases, and thus represents the majority of the bulk gas market in any given region.

Table 8

COMPARISON OF 1984 WORLDWIDE BULK GAS AND NITROGEN GAS MARKET

	Bulk Gas		Nitrogen				
Region	$M	Percent	$M	Percent	Vol(Bcf)	Percent	ASP/hcf
United States	$155.0	46.9%	$118.8	45.6%	49.5	55.6%	$0.24
Japan	115.0	34.8	88.0	33.8	22.0	24.7	0.40
Europe	25.0	7.6	20.0	7.7	10.0	11.3	0.20
ROW	35.5	10.7	33.8	12.9	7.5	8.4	0.45
	$330.5	100.0%	$260.6	100.0%	89.0	100.0%	

Source: DATAQUEST

Several factors influence the different prices for nitrogen in the different regions of the world, including mode of delivery, infrastructure, and power costs. Nitrogen prices may vary, depending on the mode of delivery, with higher costs for bulk liquid and lower costs for pipeline or on-site nitrogen. DATAQUEST estimates that when the pricing structures

for the various modes of delivery have been accounted for, the average selling price of nitrogen in the United States is $0.24/hcf. Specific information on the percent of nitrogen supplied by different delivery modes is not available for the other regions.

Prices for bulk liquid and on-site nitrogen are strongly influenced by the variable cost factors associated with distance and quantity for the delivery of liquid, and the power costs associated with operating an on-site plant. DATAQUEST believes that the average selling price for nitrogen in Europe is about $0.20/hcf, strongly influenced by excellent infrastructure, while for Japan and ROW the estimated prices are $0.40/hcf and $0.45/hcf, respectively. Total bulk atmospheric gas costs for the ROW, therefore, are influenced by not only a relatively larger volume of nitrogen because of assembly operations, but a relatively higher cost for the gas as well.

U.S. Semiconductor Gas Market by Product

Table 9 presents the dollar/volume distribution for the bulk atmospheric gases (nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen, and argon) consumed by the semiconductor industry in the United States in 1984. Nitrogen volumes and average selling prices are also presented by mode of delivery. The revenues represent direct sales of gas to semiconductor manufacturers.

Table 9

1984 BULK ATMOSPHERIC GAS SALES IN THE UNITED STATES BY PRODUCT

Gas	Volume (Bcf)	Vol %	ASP/hcf	$M	$%
Nitrogen					
On-Site	20.50	41.4%	$0.11	$ 22.6	19.0%
Pipeline	11.00	22.2	$0.22	24.2	20.4
Bulk Liquid	18.00	36.4	$0.40	72.0	60.6
Total	49.50	100.0%		$118.8	100.0%
Nitrogen	49.50	94.9%	$0.24	$118.8	76.6%
Oxygen	1.00	1.9	$0.60	6.0	3.9
Hydrogen	1.10	2.1	$1.50	16.5	10.6
Argon	0.55	1.1	$2.50	13.7	8.9
Total	52.15	100.0%		$155.0	100.0%

Source: DATAQUEST

Gases

Average selling prices for the bulk atmospheric gases have a wide range in values because of variable cost factors. These factors include the cost of power to produce the gases through cryogenic air separation and distribution costs that are distance dependent. In addition, there are the delivery and quantity terms, which depend on the relative size and age of the account. In general, average selling prices for nitrogen (per hundred cubic feet) are approximately $0.11 for on-site nitrogen generation facilities (customer pays power), $0.22 for nitrogen pipeline delivery, and $0.40 for bulk liquid nitrogen delivery. The average selling price for oxygen corresponds to $0.60/hcf, but can be as high as $1.00/hcf or more. Hydrogen typically costs $1.50/hcf, but the price may range from $1.00 to $2.50/hcf and is highly distance dependent, since there are only a limited number of facilities in the country that produce liquid hydrogen. The average selling price for argon is approximately $2.50/hcf, but again may vary over a large range of prices from $2.00 to $3.50/hcf, depending on a variety of variable cost factors.

Table 10 shows the specialty gas sales to the semiconductor industry in the United States in 1984 by gas category: silicon-precursors, dopants, plasma etchants, reactant gases, atmospheric purge/cylinder gases, and others. Please refer to Table 1 for the specific gases that are members of each category. The volumes of the different gases consumed in fabrication, as well as their average selling prices, vary considerably. In this study, only revenues associated with each specialty gas category are reported.

Table 10

1984 SPECIALTY GAS SALES IN THE UNITED STATES BY PRODUCT

Gas Category	$M	Percent
Silicon-Precursors	$17.5	35.0%
Dopants	8.0	16.0
Plasma Etchants	12.5	25.0
Reactant Gases	5.0	10.0
Atmo/Purge & Others	7.0	14.0
	$50.0	100.0%

Source: DATAQUEST

U.S. Semiconductor Gas Market by Company

Table 11 ranks the leading bulk gas suppliers by 1984 sales in the United States. Air Products has a substantial share of the bulk gas market with $72 million in sales (46.4 percent share). Air Products' two pipeline networks (in the Silicon Valley and Chandler, Arizona) account for $24.2 million of that $72 million, or 33.6 percent of Air Products' gas revenues from the semiconductor industry. The pipeline systems evaluated on their own correspond to 20.4 percent of the total industry nitrogen revenues, and 15.6 percent of the total bulk gas revenues. Linde is a strong second with 27.1 percent share of the market. Airco and Liquid Air come in at a close tie for third with 13.6 percent and 11.0 percent, respectively. Of the four major gas companies in the United States, only Air Products and Linde have merchant liquid hydrogen manufacturing facilities.

Table 11

1984 BULK ATMOSPHERIC GAS SALES IN THE UNITED STATES BY COMPANY

Company	Sales ($M)	Percent
Air Products	$ 72.0	46.4%
Linde	42.0	27.1
Airco	21.0	13.6
Liquid Air	17.0	11.0
Others	3.0	1.9
Total	$155.0	100.0%

Source: DATAQUEST

Gases

Table 12 shows the specialty gas sales in the United States in 1984. The major suppliers of specialty gases to the semiconductor industry include Airco, Union Carbide, Air Products, and Matheson. DATAQUEST estimates that they account for 70 percent of sales directly to semiconductor manufacturers in 1984. Other smaller suppliers include Scientific Gas Products, Liquid Carbonic, and Alphagaz (the specialty gas division of Liquid Air). DATAQUEST estimates that their participation in the market accounts for an additional 16 percent of direct sales to the semiconductor industry in 1984. The remaining 14 percent of sales in 1984 is spread among several companies that typically supply only one or perhaps a handful of the full complement of specialty gases.

Table 12

1984 SPECIALTY GAS SALES IN THE UNITED STATES BY COMPANY

Company	Sales ($M)	Percent
Airco	$10.5	21.0%
Linde	9.0	18.0
Air Products	8.0	16.0
Matheson	7.5	15.0
Scientific Gas Products	5.0	10.0
Liquid Carbonic	2.5	5.0
Liquid Air	0.5	1.0
Others	7.0	14.0
Total	$50.0	100.0%

Source: DATAQUEST

Table 13 presents total sales of semiconductor gases (bulk and specialty) in the United States in 1984, and overall market shares for the various suppliers.

Gases

Table 13

1984 TOTAL SEMICONDUCTOR GAS SALES BY COMPANY

Company	Sales ($M)	Percent
Air Products	$ 80.0	39.0%
Linde	51.0	24.9
Airco	31.5	15.4
Liquid Air	17.5	8.5
Matheson	7.5	3.7
Scientific Gas Products	5.0	2.4
Liquid Carbonic	2.5	1.2
Others	10.0	4.9
Total	$205.0	100.0%

Source: DATAQUEST

Japanese Semiconductor Gas Market

The total gas market in Japan in 1984 was $157 million, of which $115 million in sales (73.2 percent) were bulk gases and $42 million in sales (26.8 percent) were specialty gases. The major bulk gas suppliers to Japan's semiconductor industry are Nippon Sanso, Teisan, Daido Sanso, Osaka Sanso, and Taiyo Sanso. Table 14 shows bulk atmospheric gas sales in Japan in 1984 for these companies.

Table 14

1984 BULK ATMOSPHERIC GAS SALES IN JAPAN BY COMPANY

Company	Sales ($M)	Percent
Nippon Sanso	$ 52.0	45%
Teisan	29.0	25
Daido Sanso	8.0	7
Osaka Sanso	8.0	7
Taiyo Sanso	8.0	7
Others	10.0	9
Total	$115.0	100%

Source: DATAQUEST

In the specialty gas market, the major suppliers are Nippon Sanso and Seitetsu. Smaller suppliers of specialty gases in Japan in 1984 include Showa Denko, Teisan, and Takachiho. Iwatani, a new entrant in the specialty gas market, did not participate in sales of specialty gases to the Japanese semiconductor industry in 1984. Estimates of market share for the specialty gas suppliers are not presented at this time.

European Semiconductor Gas Market

In Europe, the total 1984 semiconductor gas market was $32 million, of which $25 million in sales (78.1 percent) were bulk gases and $7 million in sales (21.9 percent) were specialty gases. The major gas companies that supply the European semiconductor industry include Air Products, B.O.C, L'Air Liquide, Linde AG, Matheson-UCC, Messer Griesheim, and Union Carbide. (The European operations of Matheson Gas Products are owned by Union Carbide Corporation; thus the designation Matheson-UCC refers to their joint operations.)

The major gas suppliers that serve semiconductor manufacturers in the United Kingdom are B.O.C. and Air Products. In France, L'Air Liquide is the major supplier, while Air Products and Matheson-UCC have smaller shares. In West Germany, the major gas suppliers include Air Products, L'Air Liquide, Linde AG, Matheson-UCC, and Messer Griesheim. In the Benelux region, Air Products and Matheson-UCC are the two major suppliers of semiconductor gases to the area. Estimates of market share by company for the bulk and specialty gas suppliers are not presented at this time.

ROW Semiconductor Gas Market

In 1984, the semiconductor gas market in the ROW was $36.5 million, of which $35.5 million of sales (97.3 percent) were bulk gases and $1 million in sales (2.7 percent) were specialty gases. The ROW countries with significant semiconductor fabrication operations include South Korea and Taiwan, while Malaysia, Hong Kong, and Singapore have substantial assembly operations. The major gas suppliers to these regions, either through direct sales or joint venture agreements, include Nippon Sanso, Teisan, Union Carbide, B.O.C., and L'Air Liquide. Estimates of market share by company for the bulk and specialty gas suppliers are not presented at this time.

Worldwide Nitrogen Market

Nitrogen is consumed by the semiconductor industry in substantially larger volumes than any other gas. It is important to understand that nitrogen is used by a semiconductor manufacturer not only in wafer fabrication and assembly, but also to maintain the integrity of the

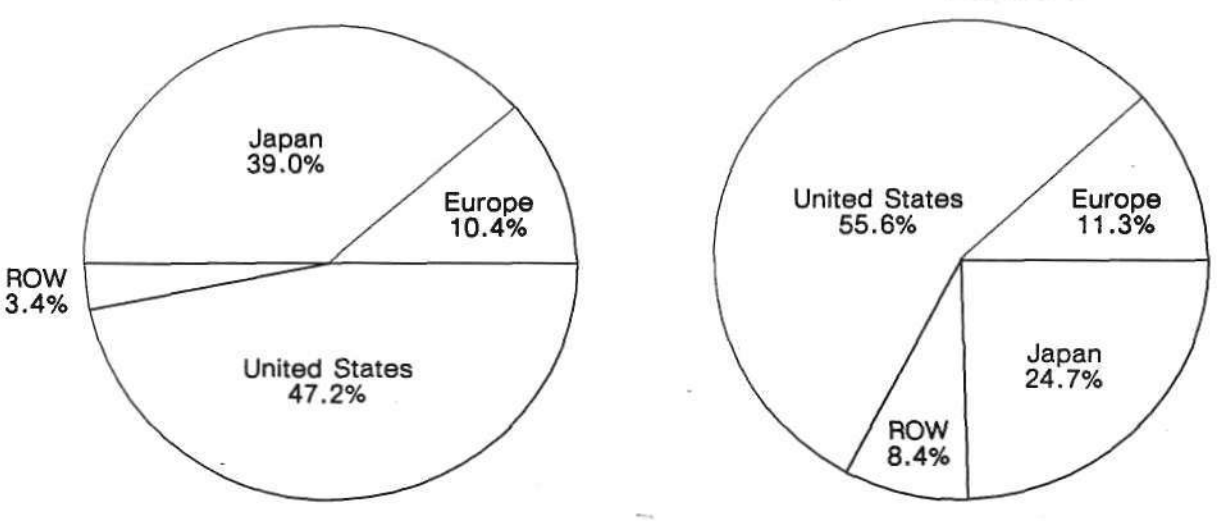
fabrication equipment and processing environment. For example, such equipment as furnace banks and some lithography tools, as well as certain types of clean stations, are supplied with a continuous flow of nitrogen, whether wafers are present or not. Therefore, the amount of nitrogen consumed by a semiconductor manufacturer is dependent in some manner on the amount of equipment in a fab as well as on the amount of wafers produced at the facility.

Total worldwide nitrogen consumption by the semiconductor industry in 1984 amounted to 89.0 Bcf (see Table 8). Figure 3 presents worldwide nitrogen consumption as well as worldwide silicon consumption by region for 1984. (Silicon consumption in the United States includes captive as well as merchant manufacturers.)

At first glance, the distribution of nitrogen by region presented in Figure 3 does not appear to correlate with total semiconductor production as measured by million square inches of processed silicon, particularly in a comparison between the United States and Japan. It appears that Japan uses quite a bit less nitrogen relative to its silicon consumption than the United States. In addition, assembly operations, which consume nitrogen, are retained onshore in Japan, while DATAQUEST estimates that 85 percent or more of assembly operations for U.S. semiconductor manufacturers are performed offshore (in the ROW).

Figure 3

1984 WORLDWIDE NITROGEN AND SILICON CONSUMPTION



Total Silicon—1,769 Million Square Inches

Total Nitrogen Volume—89.0 Bcf

Source: DATAQUEST

DATAQUEST believes that the difference in nitrogen consumption can be accounted for in part by a difference in philosophy of manufacturing operations. DATAQUEST believes that Japanese semiconductor manufacturers follow very tight regulations in nitrogen flow rates for processing equipment, whether in wafer fabrication production or in maintenance mode. In the United States, however, DATAQUEST believes that there is a tendency for a larger acceptable tolerance in nitrogen flow rates, in particular for flow rates to slowly increase over time. When it is recognized that nitrogen consumption has become unacceptably high in a given fabrication facility, flow rates are reduced to acceptable levels. However, the gradual increase in nitrogen consumption may be repeated in the absence of strict supervision in the processing environment.

There are other factors that may also account for the difference in nitrogen consumption in Japan and the United States relative to semiconductor production. The first factor to consider is product mix and its influence on consumption of nitrogen. The Japanese semiconductor industry produces a relatively larger number of discrete and linear devices than the United States. These devices do not require the same level of processing as some of the more advanced devices, and therefore do not require as much nitrogen per wafer.

A decrease in nitrogen consumption is influenced by the trend toward the usage of clean dry air (CDA) in those applications that do not require a nitrogen environment. The substitution of CDA for nitrogen in certain applications (dessicators, pneumatic-actuated valves, some lithography tools) has been adopted by some semiconductor manufacturers in the United States; however, the trend can at best be described as gradual. DATAQUEST is uncertain of the amount of CDA that is currently being used in Japanese facilities.

Other trends that correlate with a decrease in nitrogen consumption include an increase in the use of argon for annealing, as well as an increase in ion implantation over diffusion. DATAQUEST believes that Japanese semiconductor manufacturers purchased more ion implantation equipment than the United States in both 1983 and 1984. The Japanese therefore have a substantially larger focus on ion implantation than U.S. manufacturers when taken in comparison with the amount of silicon processed in each region. DATAQUEST believes that a combination of these factors account for the difference in nitrogen consumption in Japan compared with the United States, relative to their respective levels of semiconductor production.

The large consumption of nitrogen in the ROW includes not only that area's semiconductor production but the substantial assembly operations in Pacific Rim countries. DATAQUEST estimates that 85 percent or more of U.S. assembly and 90 percent of European assembly occurs offshore, and the nitrogen consumed in ROW takes into account those assembly-related nitrogen requirements.

The various factors that we believe will affect future nitrogen consumption by semiconductor manufacturers in addition to wafer starts are summarized in Table 15.

Table 15

FACTORS INFLUENCING FUTURE NITROGEN CONSUMPTION

Increases in Nitrogen Usage

- Shift toward larger-sized wafers
- Increase in nitrogen consumption for United States and Europe as assembly operations return onshore
- Increase in the installed equipment base with accompanying requirement for nitrogen to maintain integrity of processing equipment and environment

Decreases in Nitrogen Usage

- Trend toward ion implantation and away from diffusion
- Increased use of clean dry air for noncritical applications such as dessicators, pneumatic-actuated valves, and lithography equipment (e.g., aligners and track equipment)
- Trend toward use of argon in annealing rather than nitrogen (in particular for thin gate oxides)
- Decrease in nitrogen in ROW as assembly operations return onshore for the United States and Europe

Trends in Nitrogen Delivery Mode

- Areas with traditionally poor infrastructure, such as ROW, will continue to go to on-site nitrogen facilities
- U.S. in general experiencing trend toward smaller fabs; thus, trend will be toward more bulk liquid delivery of nitrogen
- Geographical concentrations of existing and future semiconductor production will be advantageous sites for multicustomer pipeline networks

Source: DATAQUEST

Since nitrogen flow is used to maintain the integrity of many pieces of processing equipment during times of nonproduction, the nitrogen market exhibits surprising stability during economic downturns in the semiconductor industry. DATAQUEST estimates that nitrogen consumption in the United States is only down 10 percent by volume in 1985, from 49.5 Bcf in 1984 to 44.5 Bcf. The corresponding decrease in million square inches of processed silicon from 1984 to 1985 is 35 percent from 834 million square inches to 542 million square inches. DATAQUEST believes that because nitrogen is such a large portion of the bulk gases market, both by volume and dollar value, that gas companies, in general, represent one of the few industries with the ability to weather the economic roller coaster of the semiconductor industry.

Worldwide Semiconductor Gas Market Forecast

Table 16 contains DATAQUEST's forecast for bulk and specialty gas sales by region from 1985 through 1990. The sales of semiconductor gases in 1984 are also included in the table. CAGR refers to compound annual growth rate.

DATAQUEST believes that in general, the consumption of the bulk atmospheric gases oxygen, argon, and hydrogen, as well as the specialty gases, will follow the trend in consumption of silicon by the semiconductor industry. However, as mentioned previously, the consumption of nitrogen is dependent not only on wafer starts but also on the installed base of equipment in fabrication facilities. The nitrogen market therefore is not as sensitive to the economic cycles of the semiconductor industry as the other gases, which are considered as direct consumable materials in wafer fabrication.

The pricing forecast for all of the bulk atmospheric gases will be influenced by the cost of power to produce them and transportation costs to distribute them. In addition, argon pricing will continue to rise in response to decreased oxygen production by the gas companies for industries outside of the semiconductor industry, in particular the steel industry. Argon is a byproduct in oxygen separation, and when oxygen demand from the steel industry was high, sufficient amounts of argon were produced to amply supply the semiconductor industry. With decreased oxygen requirements from a declining steel industry, gas manufacturers have found it necessary to run facilities for argon production alone, which is reflected in higher argon prices.

Gases

Table 16

WORLDWIDE SEMICONDUCTOR GAS MARKET FORECAST
1984-1990
(Millions of Dollars)

Region	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990	CAGR 1984-1990
United States								
BAG*	$155.0	$131	$153	$195	$244	$261	$ 318	12.7%
SPG**	50.0	34	44	62	81	79	101	12.4%
Japan								
BAG	115.0	108	124	167	218	237	293	16.9%
SPG	42.0	36	44	64	90	97	127	20.2%
Europe								
BAG	25.0	24	29	37	50	57	72	19.3%
SPG	7.0	6	8	12	17	20	26	24.4%
ROW								
BAG	35.5	33	41	58	79	90	114	21.5%
SPG	1.0	1.4	1.9	3.2	5.0	6.3	9.0	44.2%
Total								
BAG	$330.5	$296	$347	$457	$591	$645	$ 797	15.8%
SPG	$100.0	$ 77	$ 98	$141	$193	$202	$ 263	17.5%
Total	$430.5	$373	$445	$598	$784	$847	$1,060	16.2%

*Bulk atmospheric gases
**Specialty gases

Source: DATAQUEST

A system for argon reclamation has recently been developed by Coke Process Systems, Inc. (Westborough, Massachusetts) for efficient recovery and purification of argon used in silicon crystal growing operations. ARCO Solar (Camarillo, California), which manufactures silicon for solar cell applications, will have one of the first systems installed and operational by April 1986. If the claims of 80 percent recovery and higher-purity argon are realized, argon reclamation systems could have a substantial impact on the gas industry in the coming years.

In the forecast for specialty gases, the costs associated with the different specialty gas categories have not been assigned. The use of plasma etchants, however, will continue to increase as the industry focuses on dry etching for smaller geometry devices. The dopant market will see some decrease in usage over time as the trend continues toward ion implantation, which uses less material than the alternative method of diffusion. Tungsten hexafluoride usage will continue to gain a share of the specialty gas market because of the development of the Genus CVD reactor for the deposition of tunsten silicide.

Semiconductor Gas Market Regional Comparison, 1984 and 1990

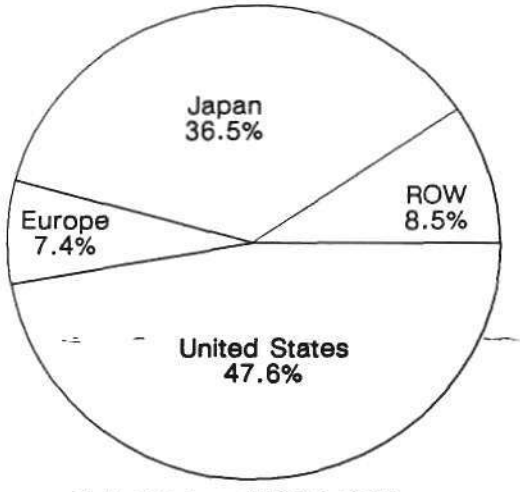
Figures 4 and 5 represent percent bulk and specialty gas sales by region for 1984 and 1990, respectively. The United States and Japan are expected to have equal shares of the worldwide semiconductor gas market in 1990, with each region responsible for approximately $420 million in gas sales. However, DATAQUEST expects that Japan will overtake the United States in consumption of silicon by 1987, and that the equal size of the respective gas markets in 1990 can be accounted for by the continued efficient utilization of nitrogen in Japan, as described previously. Europe and ROW will have also increased their share of the semiconductor gas market in 1990 over their respective shares in 1984 at the expense of the U.S. market. The increase in the Japanese, European, and ROW gas markets reflect increased silicon consumption and production of semiconductor devices relative to the U.S. semiconductor industry.

In 1984, specialty gas costs in Japan, Europe, and ROW for a given volume of gas were comparatively higher than those for the United States because of the necessity to ship gases into those regions lacking primary manufacturing capability. DATAQUEST believes that primary manufacturing of specialty gases will become more prevalent in Japan, Europe, and ROW, and therefore prices for specialty gases will become more comparable with those in the United States by 1990.

The bulk gas market in the ROW will still reflect the additional nitrogen required for assembly operations of U.S. and European devices. However, DATAQUEST believes that onshore assembly operations will continue to grow in these two regions.

Figure 4

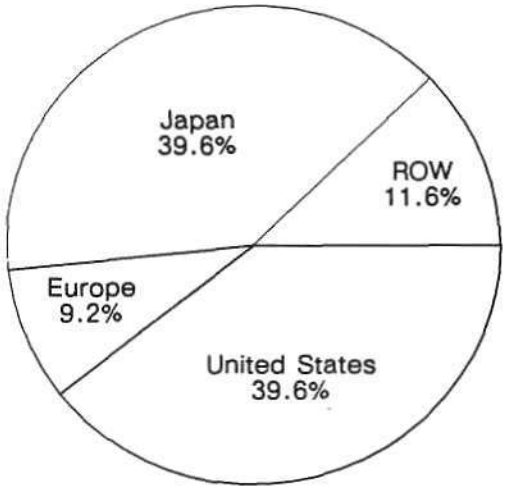
1984 WORLDWIDE SEMICONDUCTOR GAS MARKET BY REGION



Total Sales—$430.5 Million

Figure 5

ESTIMATED 1990 WORLDWIDE SEMICONDUCTOR GAS MARKET BY REGION



Total Sales—$1,060 Million

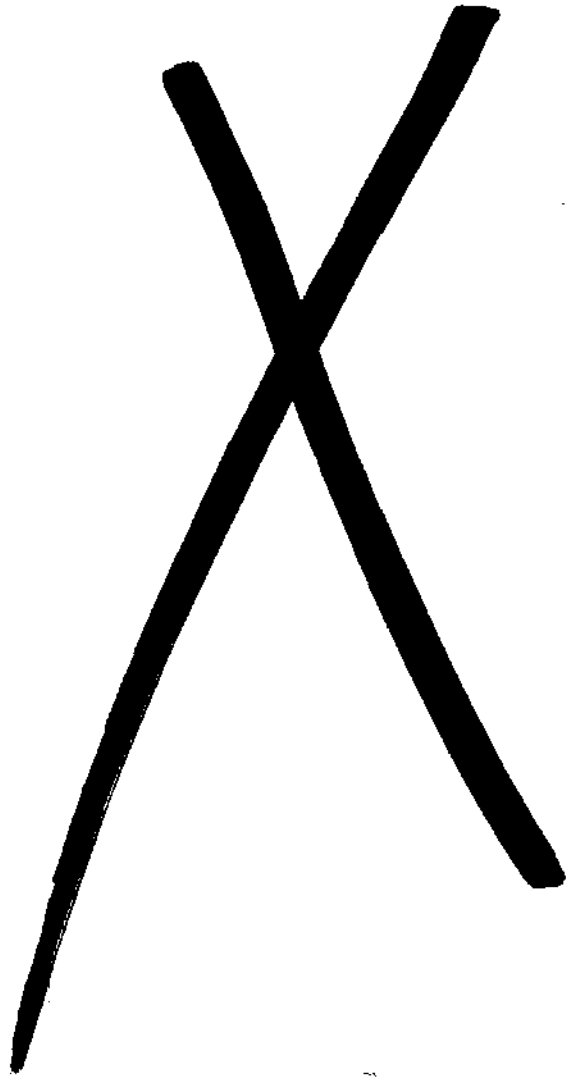
Source: DATAQUEST

Gases

GENERAL CONCLUSIONS

DATAQUEST believes that the semiconductor gas market will continue to remain price and quality competitive. There are few players in the market, and each is determined to maintain its customer base within the semiconductor industry because of the perceived importance of participating in the growth of high-technology industries. As each new semiconductor fab comes on-line, all major suppliers will participate in bidding for new contracts, and thus pricing structures will reflect the competitive drive for future market share.

In addition to competing on the basis of price, the gas companies are also focusing on the timely issues of quality control and customer support. The gas industry no longer supplies just one of the many consumable materials used in wafer fabrication, but rather offers a complete package from the gas itself to the associated gas-handling equipment to technical support at the semiconductor manufacturer's facility. The gas companies are developing integrated quality control systems from point of manufacturing to point of delivery to point of use. We believe that purity, efficient filtration systems, and quality control for gases will remain of paramount importance as semiconductor manufacturers continue to emphasize reduced particulate and contamination levels in their quest for VLSI devices and beyond.



Automated Assembly Model

OVERVIEW

This chapter deals with the design and manufacturing cost analysis of a domestic automated IC assembly facility. The facility is characterized by high-volume, standard processing, and low-labor assembly, and would therefore be more representative of a large IC manufacturer than a small-volume or contract assembler. The model assumes the highest level of automation obtainable today from merchant equipment suppliers.

A discussion of future developments in assembly technology is also included.

Because of the use of automated equipment wherever possible, the facility is heavily capitalized, and fixed costs represent a large portion of unit cost. Although labor rates are rising steadily in many overseas countries where IC assembly is common, and automation may be considered a substitute for labor, the fully automated plant may not be justifiable by payback methods for several years. The current emphasis on automating assembly is not driven by expected savings of direct labor costs.

Rather, automation is a response to the increasing need for quality assembly. Many manufacturers assert that assembly yield and product reliability of automatically assembled devices far exceeds that of manually assembled parts. The leading Japanese IC manufacturers have demonstrated excellence in product quality; this is partially attributable to their high level of automation. Process control is the key to high-speed, consistent processing. In addition to improving the independence, speed, and consistency of assembly equipment, much attention is currently centered on making advancements in CAM as a process-optimization tool and in the diagnostic and feedback capabilities of assembly equipment as it interfaces to a CAM network.

Of course, cost savings do result from yield improvements gained by automation, and these savings are most significant for high ASP (average selling price) devices and high pin-count devices. For the former, each device gained in yield represents a relatively large dollar amount. For the latter, yield improvements themselves are large because automatic bonding greatly increases throughput and yield at bond.

As automated equipment matures and becomes more affordable, the justification for automating low lead-count devices will increase. For these devices, labor and overhead are the major determinants of device cost, and these are still minimized in offshore high-labor operations.

Automated Assembly Model

WHY ONSHORE?

Onshore assembly allows faster turnaround, closer process control, and better engineering/manufacturing interface than offshore assembly. These factors all have a positive effect on product quality and customer service. Some economic benefits also result from onshore operation.

Turnaround

Faster turnaround is achieved onshore with automated processing due to the elimination of shipping time, customs procedures, and communications delays. A realistic estimate for cycle time reduction for products built onshore is one week, considering that shipping to the Far East requires two days in each direction and customs clearances often require one day. If a manufacturer is shipping against backlog, then every unnecessary day in the manufacturing cycle costs him interest on revenue. Cycle time reductions represent savings in interest applied to the selling price of the device, as well as the materials used in its construction. In addition, onshore assembly allows the domestic manufacturer of wafers to maintain a lower inventory of wafers in the "die bank" preceding assembly, because he does not have to bear the uncertainty of shipping and customs delays in his supply of material. Offshore die banks commonly hold a 10 to 15 day supply of wafers, while onshore manufacturers can manage with 3 to 5 days of backup inventory. The holding costs associated with this inventory of wafers can be quite significant; a rough estimate of the savings that would result from a seven-day reduction in wafer inventory for the RAM assembly facility modeled in this section is $989 per operating day, or $259,528 annually (calculated using 13 percent interest rate). It is clear that from the standpoint of cycle time cost reductions, there is much justification for onshore assembly of high ASP devices.

Process Control

Closer process control and better engineering/manufacturing interface are the benefits of locating process and product engineering at the manufacturing site. This allows engineering to monitor the effects of process changes in the manufacturing environment, and to implement such changes smoothly. And with the faster turnaround, process problems can be spotted more quickly, before several weeks of WIP (work in process) become involved. These two factors produce the desired incremental improvements in yield and average product quality.

Onshore Plants

Several major IC manufacturers have recently made commitments to large-scale automated facilities onshore. Motorola began operations in a new Chandler, Arizona, assembly and test facility in 1983. Intel is currently building an assembly and test facility in Chandler, where its corporate assembly and test group is located, to start up in 1985. This plant will utilize just-in-time delivery and will serve as a test site for new manufacturing equipment and processes. Fairchild has combined state-of-the-art automated equipment and its internally developed CAM system, INCYTE, at its South Portland, Maine, site to drastically reduce the labor required in assembly. Even some of the Asian subcontractors, notably Anam, Stanford Microsystems, and Dynetics, are considering opening U.S. facilities to serve their client bases here. Cypress has been successfully running high volume operations in San Jose, California, for several years.

An Economic Comparison

Traditionally, onshore production has been considered prohibitively expensive by IC makers. A discussion of the tradeoffs may shed some light on the economic issues. If automated assembly is the goal, equipment depreciation costs will be the same for onshore and offshore. Construction costs are comparable, and facilities costs may be higher overseas depending on location. So, fixed costs do not represent a strong argument for either case. Material costs are not dependent on location. Labor costs are a major advantage for offshore assembly, although availability of skilled labor to maintain automated equipment overseas may be a difficult problem. Elimination of freight and exporting charges, legal costs of exporting, and communications charges, plus cycle time cost reductions discussed earlier, are economic advantages not always considered when comparing onshore and offshore costs. These narrow the gap and may even close it, depending on such factors as device size and costs, site country under consideration, and service networks utilized. However, industry consensus is that offshore assembly still enjoys a slight cost advantage over onshore, and this will be true for at least a few more years.

PRODUCTIVITY CONSIDERATIONS

Organization

The assembly facility is intended to produce a maximum output and also to provide an environment for process optimization work. Accordingly, manufacturing is a three-shift-per-day, five-day-per-week

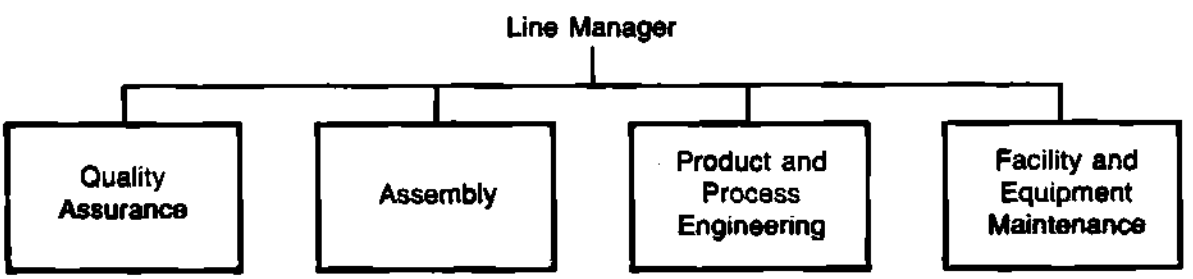
operation and manufacturing personnel, including operators, supervisors, quality assurance inspectors, and facility and maintenance technicians cover three shifts. Product and process engineering interface with manufacturing during the day shift. All personnel report to the line manager who holds the responsibility for setting and meeting goals in the areas of product quality level and assembly yields, and keeping abreast of current technology. A typical organization chart is shown in Figure 1.

The assembly group consists of assembly operators and assembly supervisors. Although an operator is usually trained and certified to run several stations on the line, he typically performs one function during a shift rather than accompanying a batch of material through the line. Much of the operator's work involves keeping a station supplied with material, loading and unloading the input and output when necessary, logging the flow of material through that point in the line, and transporting finished material to the next point. He or she has been trained in operation of the equipment, and monitors it for malfunctions requiring maintenance attention. Each supervisor is responsible for managing a section of the process; he or she schedules material movement through the line and can shut down a station for unscheduled maintenance if it runs outside the assembly specification.

The facilities and equipment maintenance staff has the responsibility for ensuring optimum performance of the equipment and facilities networks such as water and power supply. Technicians perform scheduled maintenance on equipment and any necessary changeovers of transfer and indexing systems unique to device types. They also repair and tune equipment that has malfunctioned or wandered outside operating specifications.

Figure 1

ORGANIZATION CHART



Source: DATAQUEST

Quality assurance performs selective inspections of output to ensure that the product meets specifications at each step in the process and at the final visual stage. The frequency and extent of inspection is usually determined by sampling plan theory. If lots fail the QA inspection on these terms, they may require 100 percent visual inspection. This should prove necessary for less than 5 percent of the lots. QA personnel may also perform tests such as bond pull or solderability to accept lots on a quality basis.

Another very important function of QA is incoming inspection of assembly materials. This is to ensure that material quality and consistency is sufficient for use in the specified processes, and is becoming more critical as processing speed and equipment sensitivity increase.

Product and process engineers provide the specifications for device assembly. They develop and install new processes, train operators to run the various assembly stations, and take responsibility for the quality of material produced. Because IC processing requires knowledge pertaining to device characteristics, material properties, and equipment capability, this group usually consists of a mix of electrical engineers, mechanical engineers, material engineers, and chemists.

Equipment Selection Criteria

The range of choices of equipment has been broadening as European and Japanese vendors extend their product offerings to the U.S. market. In addition, many large IC producers, including Texas Instruments and Fairchild, internally develop machines with the goals of meeting a special need or improving upon what is available on the open market. Many assemblers also work with equipment vendors to customize standard models by creating interfaces between stations or adapting load/unload mechanisms to the assembler's magazine.

Each manufacturer's criteria for equipment selection vary with his unique constraints, including product mix and available resources. Maintaining a high utilization of equipment is key to cost-effective assembly. Some equipment is optimally used in a dedicated fashion and can run very high volumes without maintenance or adjustment. Other equipment offers flexibility in changeover between device types or pin counts and is more efficient for the small volume manufacturer or subcontractor, but is often less fully automated. For example, one plate mold can be used for semiautomatic encapsulation of 8, 14, 16, and 20 pin DIP's in the 300 mil family, but offers lower throughput than a fully automated mold system.

Automated Assembly Model

The numbers of each type of equipment must be balanced to maintain the highest possible utilizations, especially at the stations such as mold where investment is heaviest. The calculation of output for each machine must consider not only the expected usage, which depends largely on downtime due to changeovers, scheduled maintenance, and repair, but also on the size of the die being processed, the device pin count, and the geometry of both the die and the package. For example, die size and wafer yield will affect the throughput at die attach; and bond pad placement and pin count determine throughput at wire bond.

Consistent with the assumptions of this model, we shall assume dedicated equipment where applicable in the model. The equipment list in the Appendix, however, will be as complete as possible.

Staffing

For a 7.6 million devices-to-test per period operation of this kind, our estimate of requirements in terms of people is shown in Table 1. This estimate reflects the product dedicated-assembly model; a wider range of products would increase staffing requirements.

Table 1

STAFFING REQUIREMENTS

Classification	Job Function	Personnel Required (Total for Three Shifts)	Estimated Wage Rate Per Period* (Thousands of Dollars
Direct	Assembly Operators	119	$1.6
Indirect	Line Manager	1	$5.0
	Assembly Supervisor	6	$3.4
Allocated	Quality Assurance Personnel	21	$2.0
	Process and Product Engineering	20	$3.5
	Facility and Equipment Maintenance Technicians	24	$2.5

*Period equals four weeks

Source: DATAQUEST

ASSEMBLY LAYOUT AND FACILITY REQUIREMENTS

Introduction

In this section we describe the main process flow used for assembling plastic encapsulated packages, list the needed equipment, show an example of equipment layout in the assembly area, and describe the facility requirements.

Laying out a production assembly area requires balancing of often-contradicting needs. The requirements are similar to those considered in fab design. These objectives are to:

- Ensure a smooth flow of material through the sequence of assembly operations
- Allocate space and equipment for new technology developments so that this activity will not interfere with standard production.
- Simplify the layout of piping, air, and exhaust ducting and power distribution for ease of maintenance and minimal construction cost
- Facilitate equipment maintenance, so that it will not disturb work on all equipment
- Isolate "dirty" back-end processes such as mold, trim and form, and solder dip from cleaner front-end processes such as wafer saw, die attach, and wire bond to minimize particulate contamination

Utilization of the clean area is left as an option to the reader. IC makers vary from no clean room use at all to full utilization, including back-end processing. One intermediate approach is local clean areas achieved with laminar flow hoods. It seems a general rule, however, that front-end processing is separated from or protected from the contamination generated in the back end. We represent this isolation by physically dividing assembly into two areas.

Process Flow

The plastic processing flow is a well-established one. The outline shown in Table 2 is fairly standard with the exception of lead finishing. Lead plating before trim and form is also common practice;

some manufacturers produce both plated and dipped parts. We have chosen to use solder-dipped parts for two reasons:

- In general, dipping is associated with less contamination than plating and is more consistent with the high automation and reliability goals modeled.
- The model's product mix includes a surface-mounted product on which users prefer to have the thicker solder coat that is provided by dipping.

Table 2

PLASTIC ASSEMBLY PROCESS FLOW OUTLINE

Process Step	Function
Incoming	Receive and log in wafers from fabrication
Wafer Mount	Affix probed wafer onto taped frame
Saw	Scribe wafer into dice
Die Attach	Mount good die onto leadframe bar pad
Epoxy Wire	Cure die attach paste
Wire Bond	Form electrical connection between chip I/O and leadframe with gold wire
Mold/Mold Cure	Encapsulate bonded device in thermoplastic
Deflash	Remove residual resin on leadframe surface from mold
Trim and Form singulate devices	Remove extra metal from leadframe; form leads and"
Label	Mark vendor and device identification on part
Lead Finish	Solder coat leads
QC--Rework	Inspect parts for visual defects; rework label or lead finish and straighten leads
Outgoing	Document lot statistics and ship to Burn-In/Test area

Source: DATAQUEST

Automated Assembly Model

Equipment List

The list of equipment necessary for performing all the required process steps is given in the appendix at the end of this section, with representative prices, delivery times, and manufacturers. Only merchant manufacturers of fully automatic equipment are listed; semiautomatic and manual equipment available on the market is not listed and neither are exclusively captive manufacturers.

It should be noted that price and delivery time vary somewhat with manufacturer and with options desired; therefore the information listed for the processes of this model may not be applicable in every case.

The estimates of yield by process step used in calculating capacity and equipment requirements are shown in Table 3. They are theoretical allocations of the overall assembly yield, which is determined at room-temperature testing. Conservative utilization figures for each equipment group were used to allow for maintenance required to maintain optimum performance. The total equipment cost for the model facility of 98.8 million devices-to-test per year capacity was approximately $5 million.

One notable exemption on the equipment list is a CAM (computer-aided manufacturing) system, which is a necessity in state-of-the-art production facilities. The choice of system is left to the reader and depends of various factors such as the form of engineering analysis desired and hardware preferences. The cost of a complete CAM system can easily run to $800,000; a typical breakdown would be $50,000 for a CPU, $150,000 for peripheral hardware, $100,000 to $200,000 in software, and $400,000 for in-house installation costs. Installation and optimization of a system into a manufacturing environment can require two years or longer.

Table 3

DEVICE MECHANICAL YIELD

Operation	Yield (Percent)	Cumulative Yield (Percent)	Number of Starts Per Week
Wafer Mount	100.0%	100.0%	1,949,612
Wafer Saw	100.0%	100.0%	1,949,612
Die Attach	99.5%	99.5%	1,949,612
Wire Bond	99.0%	98.5%	1,939,864
Mold	99.5%	98.0%	1,920,465
Trim and Form	99.5%	97.5%	1,910,863
Label	100.0%*	97.5%	1,901,309
Lead Finish	100.0%*	97.5%	1,901,309
Overall Assembly Yield		97.5%	

Devices-To-Test Per 4-Week Period--7,605,235

*With rework

Source: DATAQUEST

Assembly Layout

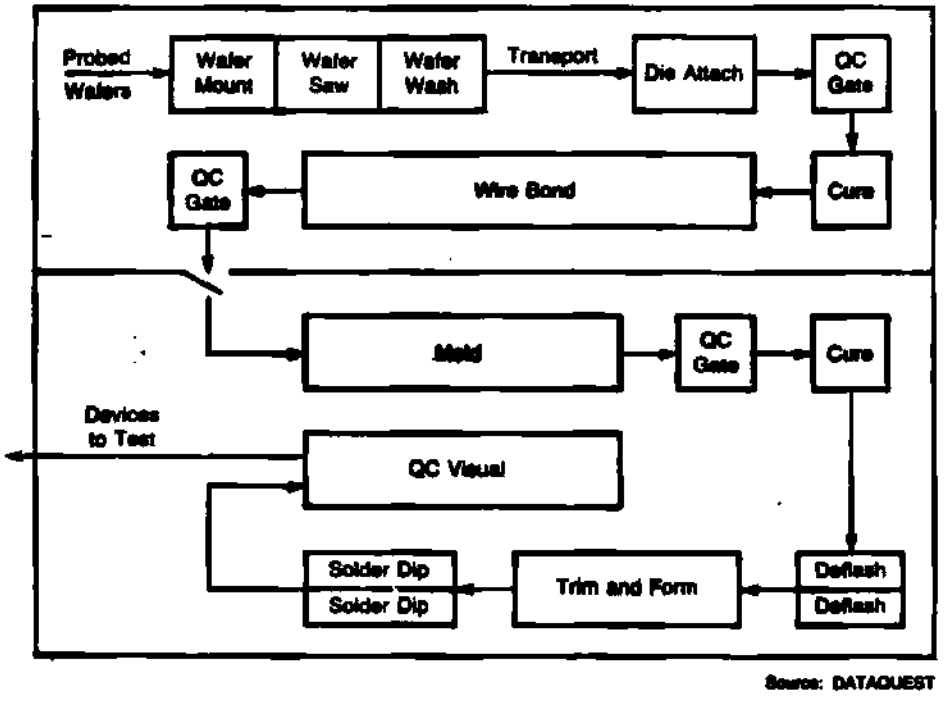
A typical layout for the equipment in the assembly area is shown in Figure 2. The figure illustrates the islands automation arrangement typical today. As robotic capability increases, and operations are tied together with automatic interfaces, an in-line arrangement may become more effective.

As discussed earlier, the front end is separated from the back end to allow for cleaner processing of the chip. Material transport is still performed by humans but only in bulk form. Ideally, a standard magazine holding several hundred leadframes is used at all stations for loading and unloading so that no direct human handling of the materials being assembled is necessary.

Automated Assembly Model

Figure 2

ASSEMBLY AREA LAYOUT



Source: DATAQUEST

Facility Requirements

The assembly area requires installed services to supply DI water, liquid nitrogen, pressurized air, and hydrogen, in addition to standard utilities. The costs of these installations is included in the construction costs listed under fixed costs in Table 4. For accounting purposes, we have assumed that this cost is covered at one time as a nonrecoverable leasehold improvement rather than over time in the form of an allowance against rental fees.

Table 4

LABOR COSTS
(Thousands of Dollars)

Personnel	Number	Wage Rate	Personnel Cost Per Period	25 Percent Fringe Benefit	Total Personnel Cost
Direct:					
Assembly Operators	119	$1.6	$190.4	$47.60	$238.00
Indirect:					
Line Manager	1	$5.0	$ 5.0		
Assembly Supervisor	6	$3.4	$ 20.4		
Total Indirect			$ 25.4	$ 6.35	$ 31.75
Allocated:					
Quality Assurance Personnel	21	$2.0	$ 42.0		
Process and Product Engineering	20	$3.5	$ 70.0		
Facility and Equipment Maintenance Technicians	24	$2.5	$ 60.0		
Total Allocated			$172.0	$43.00	$215.00

Source: DATAQUEST

Automated Assembly Model

ASSEMBLY COSTS ANALYSIS ASSUMPTIONS

The assumptions described in previous sections are:

- Production
  - High volume (7.6 million devices-to-test per four-week period)
  - Three full shifts in assembly
  - Personnel requirements, wage rates, and labor costs for direct, indirect, and allocated personnel as shown in Table 5
  - Mature operation in steady-state mode
- Yield: Overall assembly yield is 97.5 percent
- Technology
  - Fully automated processing by station
  - Standard plastic processing
  - Five-inch wafer
  - Solder dip lead finish

The product mix used to calculate resource requirements was chosen to optimize the effectiveness of onshore automated assembly. A product mix of approximately one-third each 64K DRAMs in a 16-pin DIP, 64K DRAMs in an 18-pin chip carrier, and 256K DRAMs in a 16-pin DIP was found to represent a high-volume product that requires standard processing but still commands a fairly high average selling price.

Assembly yield is assumed to be sufficient to eliminate the second optical and third optical inspection stations historically found after die attach and wire bond, respectively. Instead, QC gates after each major process step sample material to monitor product quality.

Table 5

ASSEMBLY COST ANALYSIS

Fixed Costs Per Period (Four Weeks)	
Rent (20,000 Square Feet at $0.60 per square feet)	$ 12,000
Power	$ 28,500
Gases	$ 6,500
Water	$ 750
Depreciation:	
Assembly construction (120 months); $900,000	$ 7,500
Other construction, including office and rest area (120 months); $240,000	$ 2,000
Assembly equipment, excluding CAM system (60 months); $4,977,300	$ 82,955
Total Per Calendar Month	$140,205
Total Per Period	129,420
Cost Per Device Out	$ 0.017
Variable Costs Per Period	
Material Cost Per Device (Yielded):	
Leadframe (stamped, silver spot)	$ 0.035
Mold Compound	0.016
Epoxy	0.006
Gold Wire	0.006
Cost Per Device Out	$ 0.063
Labor Cost Per Period:	
Direct	$238,000
Indirect	31,750
Allocated	215,000
Total Per Period	$484,750
Cost Per Device Out	$ 0.064

Source: DATAQUEST

Automated Assembly Model

FIXED COSTS

Facilities

We assume that the building is rented as a shell at $.60 per square foot per month. The space rented consists of 12,000 square feet of assembly area and 8,000 square feet for offices and service, totaling 20,000 square feet. Facility design is contracted to an outside engineering firm and all facilities and services are supplied from scratch.

Table 4 shows that the average cost of construction and equipment of the systems supporting the assembly area is $900,000. The cost of nonmanufacturing area construction, which includes office space, eating area, rest rooms, etc., is $240,000. The sum of $1,140,000 represents the total permanent or nonrecoverable investment in the rented shell, and is depreciable over a ten-year period.

Equipment

The appendix to this section shows that equipment costs for the assembly area total $4,977,300. Such costs can normally be depreciated over a five- to seven-year period; due to the high-technology nature of the equipment, we have assumed the shortest possible depreciation period, or five years.

The packaging cost per device out, exclusive of chip cost, based on all fixed costs and variable costs of materials and labor, is shown as a percentage of the total cost:

Fixed Cost Per Device	$0.017	11.4%
Assembly Materials	$0.068	45.6
Assembly Labor	$0.064	43.0
	$0.149	100.0 %

Fixed costs represent a relatively high portion of the yielded device cost in this model due to the heavy investment in automated equipment. As automation capability in handling and inspection grows, this sector will gain a share of the cost from the labor cost sector. However, labor will always occupy a significant place in assembly cost in the form of skilled labor; engineering and maintenance personnel will contribute to the automation process and displace direct labor personnel.

FUTURE DEVELOPMENTS IN ASSEMBLY TECHNOLOGY

DATAQUEST believes that improvements in assembly technology over the next ten years will occur through increased automation of existing processes and integration of operations by CAM rather than through revolutionary changes in process technology. The driving forces behind assembly evolution will continue to be cost reduction, yield improvement, and reliability enhancement.

Cost reductions will be achieved with faster processing speeds and higher equipment utilization, as both of these result in increased material flow through the assembly line. CAM systems are increasingly being found in assembly areas, and their initial implementation is usually WIP management, which tracks and schedules material movement through each process. As CAM capability and computer equipment interfaces improve, CAM diagnostic programs will also troubleshoot equipment problems and minimize downtimes.

Individual processes are becoming faster as well. Equipment manufacturers estimate that die attach throughputs will increase to 7,000 to 9,000 parts per hour within four years, and wire bonding will approach reliable limits of 10 to 12 wires per second. New curing technologies such as microwave are expected to decrease mold cure time by 75 percent. And with implementation of tape-automated bonding (TAB) assembly, injection molding using thermoset plastics may multiply throughputs achieved currently with thermoplastics and transfer molding.

Yield improvement goals are driving the industry toward elimination of human material handling except in bulk form. Loading and unloading mechanisms for wafer saw and die attach will become fully automatic and these two operations may be combined into one independent station. With increased sophistication in pattern recognition systems (PRS), optical sensing of start points and optical inspections will further reduce human participation in processing and standardized; high-capacity feed systems for all operations will decrease total loading time and frequency. The natural direction in this trend is to automatic station-to-station material transfer, probably by robotic carts that will follow preprogrammed paths or routes defined by magnetic tape on the floor. Dataquest believes that this capability will exist within 10 years.

Product reliability standards will rise with these developments in assembly technology. As the automation level rises, process controllability and consistency grow. And process consistency has an additive effect on reliability enhancement: chips consistently placed on the die attach surface are bonded more reliably, well-bonded wires are less subject to ball lifts during mold, and so on. Finally, diagnostic capabilities of future CAM systems will incorporate quality control into the processes by controlling process parameters and by continuously feeding back quality information such as ball placement and loop height to the equipment.

APPENDIX

EQUIPMENT LIST FOR AUTOMATED ASSEMBLY AREA

Item	Unit Cost (Thousands of Dollars)	Number Required	Total Cost (Thousands of Dollars)	Delivery (Weeks)	Manufacturers
Wafer Washer	$ 10.0	1	$ 10.0		Micro Automation
Wafer Mounter	$ 3.5	1	$ 3.5		Disco (1985 introduction K&S and ASM)
Wafer Saw	$ 90.0	5	$ 450.0	18-36	ASM Disco K&S Micro Automation
Die Attach System	$ 70.0	8	$ 560.0	20	AMI ASM K&S Shinkawa
Cure Ovens	$ 5.0	8	$ 40.0	10-12	Blue M
Wire Bonder	$ 85.0	22	$1,870.0	16-36	ASM Jade K&S Shinkawa
Mold System	$200.0	3	$ 600.0	50-80	ASM/Pico Dai Ichi Towa Yamada/YKC (1985 introduction Kras and Dusan)
Deflash	$140.0	2	$ 280.0		Kras Towa
Trim and Form	$150.0	2	$ 300.0	50	ASM/Pico Kras Towa Yamada/YKC
Label	$100.0	2	$ 200.0		Markem
Lead Finish (solder dip)	$150.0	2	$ 300.0		Electrovert Hollis Tamura Treiber
Inspection Microscopes	$ 4.0	10	40.0		Leitz Nikon Olympus
Miscellaneous (magazines, carts, etc.)			$ 20.0		
Subtotal			$4,673.5		
6.5 percent tax			303.8		
Total			$4,977.3		

Source: DATAQUEST

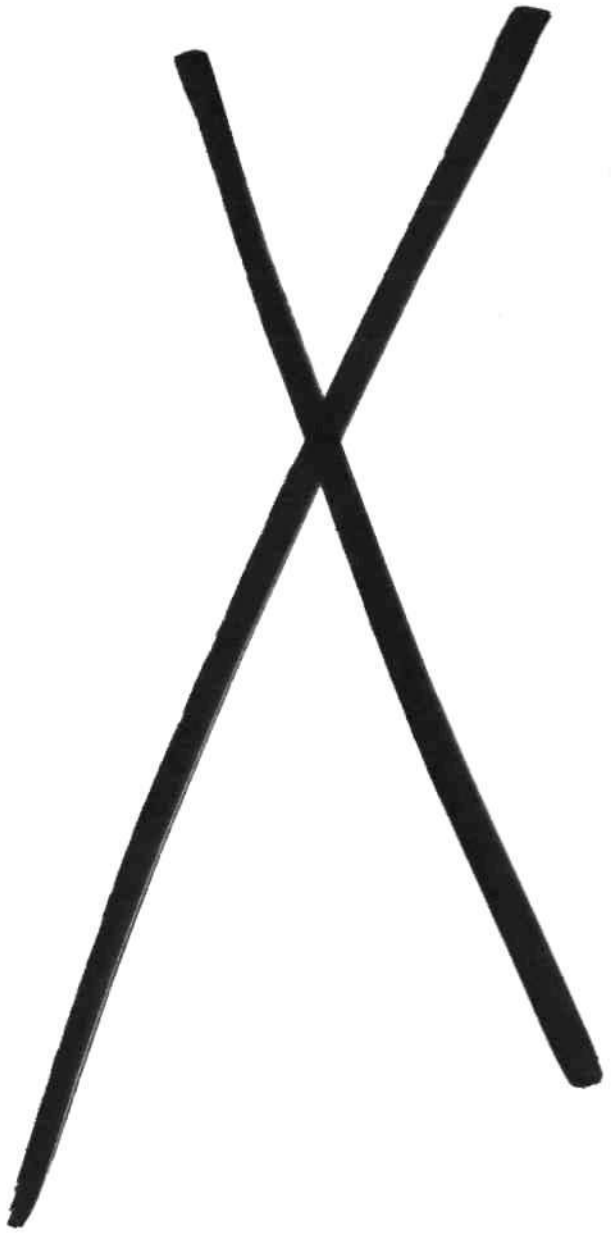
Automated Assembly Model

APPENDIX

EQUIPMENT LIST FOR AUTOMATED ASSEMBLY AREA

Item	Unit Cost (Thousands of Dollars)	Number Required	Total Cost (Thousands of Dollars)	Delivery (Weeks)	Manufacturers
Wafer Washer	$ 10.0	1	$ 10.0		Micro Automation
Wafer Mounter	$ 3.5	1	$ 3.5		Disco (1985 introduction K&S and ASM)
Wafer Saw	$ 90.0	5	$ 450.0	18-36	ASM Disco K&S Micro Automation
Die Attach System	$ 70.0	8	$ 560.0	20	AMI ASM K&S Shinkawa
Cure Ovens	$ 5.0	8	$ 40.0	10-12	Blue M
Wire Bonder	$ 85.0	22	$1,870.0	16-36	ASM Jade K&S Shinkawa
Mold System	$200.0	3	$ 600.0	50-80	ASM/Pico Dai Ichi Towa Yamada/YRC (1985 introduction Kras and Dusan)
Deflash	$140.0	2	$ 280.0		Kras Towa
Trim and Form	$150.0	2	$ 300.0	50	ASM/Pico Kras Towa Yamada/YRC
Label	$100.0	2	$ 200.0		Markem
Lead Finish (solder dip)	$150.0	2	$ 300.0		Electrovert Hollis Tamura Treiber
Inspection Microscopes	$ 4.0	10	40.0		Leitz Nikon Olympus
Miscellaneous (magazines, carts, etc.)			$ 20.0		
Subtotal			$4,673.5		
6.5 percent tax			303.8		
Total			$4,977.3		

Source: DATAQUEST



Automatic Photoresist Processing Equipment

SUMMARY

Photoresist processing is one of the stable sets of processing steps in the semiconductor fabrication sequence. However, equipment vendors are now being pushed by semiconductor manufacturers to provide new process steps and new levels of control to satisfy the need to make larger and higher-performance integrated circuits. Manufacturers expect the new generation of equipment to ensure better defect control and closer tolerances for temperature and photoresist thickness. It is only with these improvements that the semiconductor industry can realize efficient production of DRAMs of 1 Megabit and greater.

The emergence of the small captive and custom semiconductor manufacturer as a major market segment has generated a demand for smaller capacity machines. By running production on several of these relatively inexpensive systems, throughput needs can be satisfied while providing redundancy that would not be available with one single system.

The requirement for lower defect levels is generating a need for more automation and less operator involvement in the manufacturing sequence. One outcome of this need is the integration of the photoresist process and the lithography process in one cassette-to-cassette operation. Another new feature is the integration of instrumentation, such as photoresist thickness monitors and end-point detection on developer modules. Local environmental control will be integrated to maintain low defect levels during photoresist processing.

DATAQUEST believes that the worldwide market for automatic photoresist processing equipment for 1983 was $90 million, up from $67 million in 1982. We believe that this market will grow to $137.1 million in 1984, up 62.33 percent, and $294.5 million in 1988. This represents a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 26.75 percent from 1983 to 1988.

Automatic Photoresist Processing Equipment

TECHNOLOGY

Overview

Photoresist processing on wafers coupled with exposure of the resist by the aligner are the most important steps in semiconductor fabrication. The fabrication process flow goes through the photoresist processing step in almost identical procedures, a total of 5 to 7 times for discretes, 7 to 10 times for ICs, and 10 to 15 times for LSI functions (see Figure 1). Other steps of the fabrication process can be done in a variety of ways and have changed with the increasing level of integration (e.g., implanting has largely replaced predeps, and thin film deposition has largely replaced grown oxide films). Photoresist processing has fundamentally stayed the same. Seventy-five percent of the yield loss at wafer sort (die probe) is controlled by the defect level associated with the photoresist patterning. The speed performance of the device being fabricated is partially determined by the minimum line width achievable in the photoresist. One of the factors limiting the number of components that can be put on a chip is determined by the inverse square of the average dimension in the circuit layout (the reciprocal of the area of a component).

Photoresist processing takes place after wafers leave thin film deposition or oxidation, prior to align-expose, and again prior to wet or dry etching. The photoresist processing steps universally used are: coating on a spinner, baking in a belt oven or on a hot plate, and developing. Additional steps that can be added to the processing as needed are scrubbing and dehydration processing prior to coating, a post exposure bake prior to developing, a hard bake after developing, and deep UV resist hardening after developing. Photoresist processing is done in an area separate from the rest of the fabrication since illuminating the photoresist-coated wafers to the green or blue portions of the light spectrum would expose the resist. This section of the fab area is frequently called the "yellow room" because of the yellow lights used to illuminate it. Figure 2 shows the flow of wafers through the photoresist processing steps.

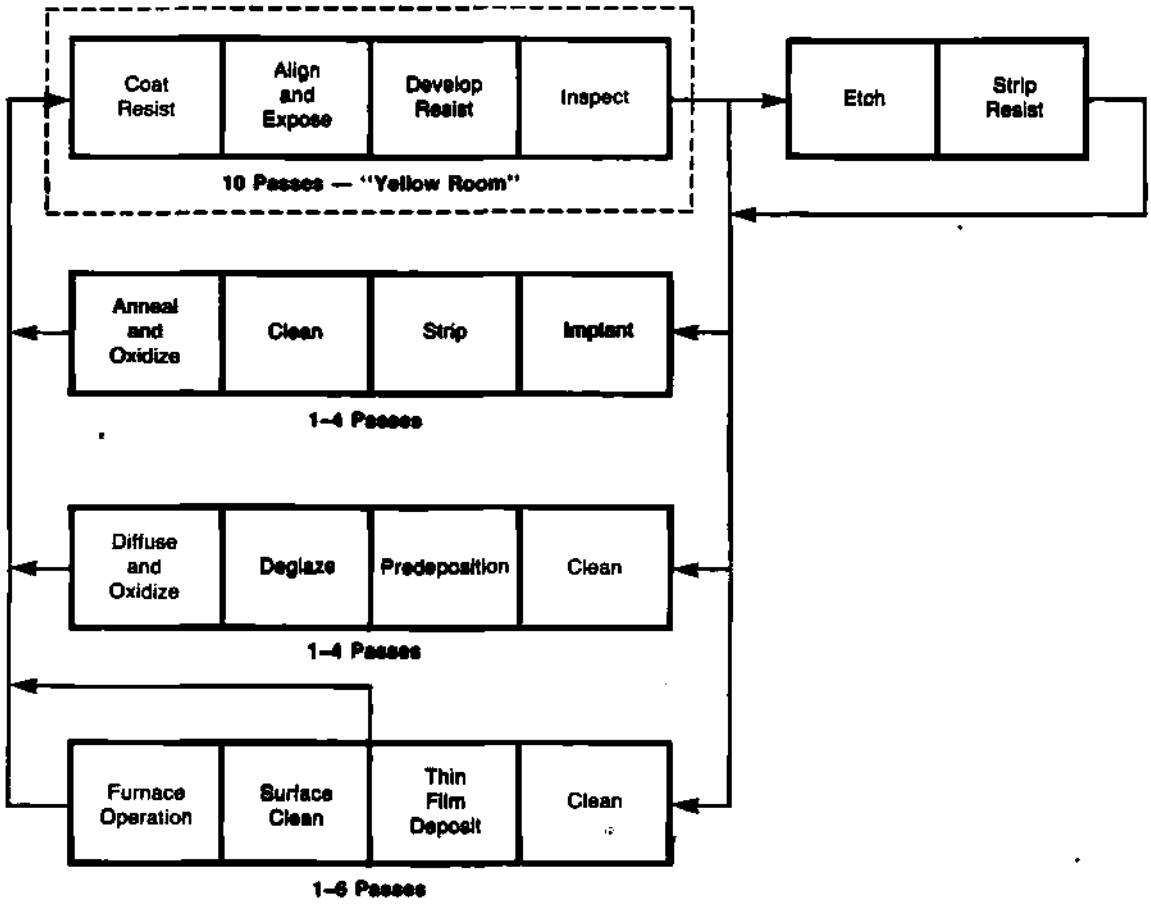
Capacity

Capacity for automatic photoresist processing is normally measured in tracks. The processing steps are done sequentially so the capacity in wafers per hour through a track is determined by the longest processing step, normally one of the bakes. With a belt oven, which has a capacity of six wafers at a time in processing, and a 5- to 10-minute bake cycle, the rate is 40 to 70 wafers per hour. Systems using hot plate bake

Automatic Photoresist Processing Equipment

Figure 1

FABRICATION MATERIAL FLOW

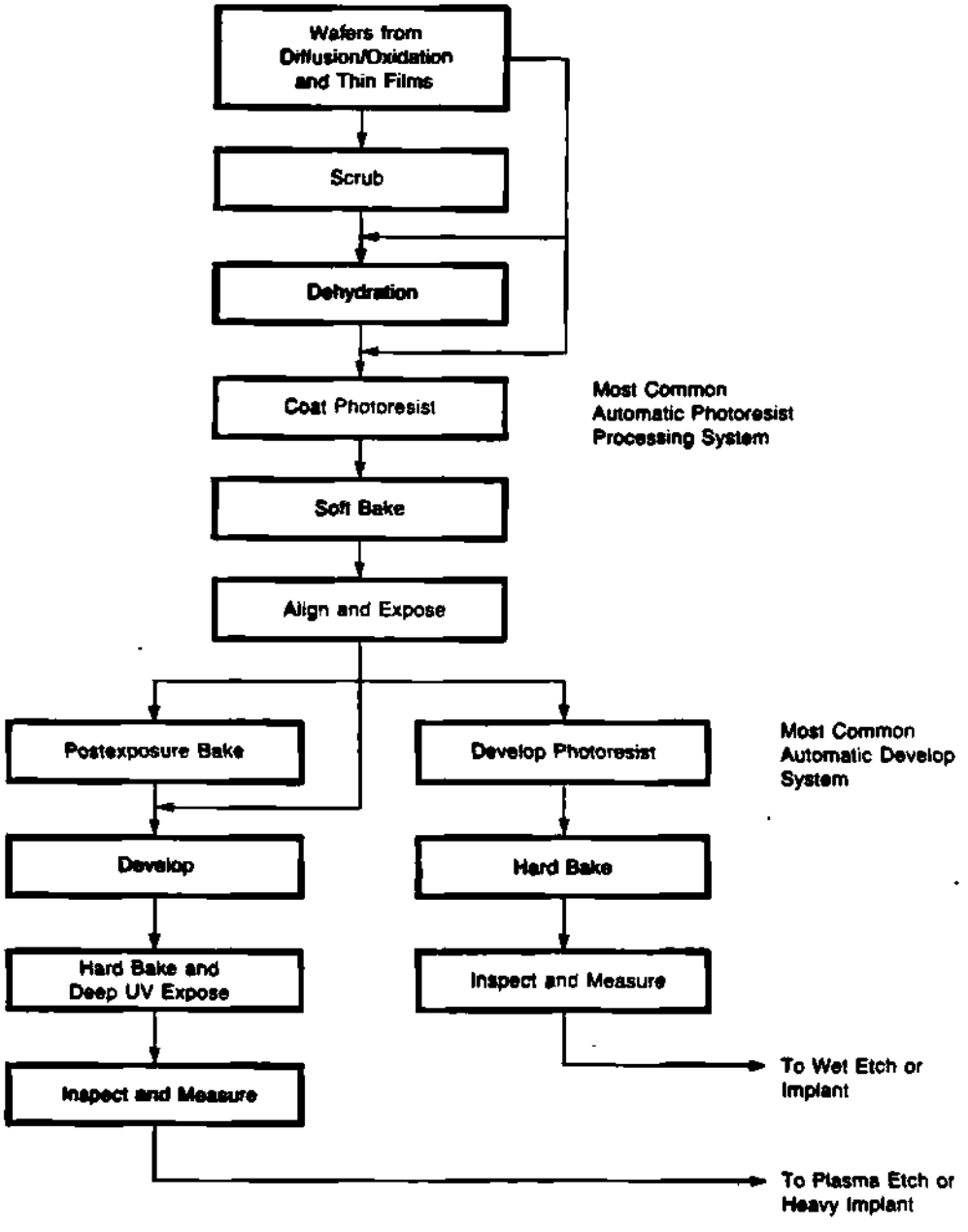


Source: DATAQUEST

Automatic Photoresist Processing Equipment

Figure 2

PHOTORESIST PROCESSING FLOW



Source: DATAQUEST

one wafer at a time, with a total bake cycle time of 40 to 60 seconds, resulting in rates of 60 to 80 wafers per hour. Other steps in the photoresist process normally take less time: coating runs from 15 to 40 seconds, developing takes 25 to 60 seconds, scrub is variable, and dehydration runs from 15 to 40 seconds.

Each track will support a wafer start level in the fabrication process of:

$$\frac{\text{starts/week}}{\text{track}} = \frac{\text{wafers/hour x hours/day x days/week}}{\text{mask layers/ wafer starts}}$$

- Assume: An average processing time of 60 seconds per processing step, derated from a peak of 40 seconds to allow for material I/O, resulting in a throughput of 60 wafers/hour
- A two-shift fabrication operation, with downtime for service, line imbalances, cleaning, etc., resulting in a 60 percent utilization or 10 hours/day
- A five-day scheduled work week with weekend work used to correct for schedule misses
- An average of 10 masking layers to complete a device as an average over discrete and LSI functions

Then:

$$\frac{\text{starts/week}}{\text{tracks}} = \frac{60 \times 10 \times 5}{10} = 300$$

This is for coat only. If automatic in-line develop is used, one track of develop would also be required.

It is interesting to determine what size semiconductor business is supported by each track of coat and develop:

yearly sales = wafer starts/week x weeks/year x $ sales/wafer start

- Assume: 300 starts/week/track and 50 weeks/year
- $500 to $1,000 sales/wafer start (based on 5-inch wafer and $25 to $50/in.^{2} of silicon in sales)

Then:

dollar sales /track/year = 300 x 50 x 500, 1,000 = $7.5 to $15M

The above calculations show that a large semiconductor business is possible for a relatively small amount of track capacity.

Equipment

Automatic photoresist processing systems typically contain two or three tracks in a single cabinet, with one cassette per track. A linear layout of processing stations leads to the cassette's receive location. Wafers are moved from the cassette via O-ring belts, air bearings, or pick-and-place mechanisms, and then moved in and out of the process station with a shuttle mechanism. An exception to this is Machine Technology, which uses a single cassette for input and output (the processed wafer returns to the input cassette). It processes wafers in a single station with different processing heads brought to the wafer. It has recently added an independent bake module.

Processes

Each vendor uses fundamentally the same technology at each step for automatic photoresist processing equipment. For example, a hot plate from one vendor works similarly to one from another vendor. Many components such as spin motors and resist pumps are purchased from outside vendors and are sometimes common. Equipment tends to differ in wafer transport, in cup design for spin bowls, and in the layout of the system and control system.

The technology involved can be more easily understood by examining each process step.

Scrubbing

This step is not universally used. Its function is to remove particles deposited on wafers in an earlier step or in transit. The results of scrubbing are sometimes worse than if the wafers were not scrubbed. Two techniques are currently used: brush and high-pressure spray. Brush scrubbing mechanically dislodges particles from the surface of the wafer by the movement of bristles sweeping them off the wafer. This technique sometimes deposits as much foreign material as it takes off. With high-pressure spray, a high-pressure water jet, running at

2,000 to 3,000 psi, is used as a scrub where bristles cannot penetrate into the topology of patterned wafers to reach particles. It can damage gate oxides with electrostatic discharges if not properly used.

Dehydration

This step is sometimes included to improve the ability of the resist to adhere to the wafer. The need for it is determined by the resist chosen (positive resist requires its use more than negative resist) and the type of thin film or oxide on the wafer. Dehydration is done by either heating the wafers to more than 250°C for several seconds, or by chemically removing surface water with HMDS (hexamethyldisilazane). These two methods have recently been combined in a module that has a 250°C hot plate and a HMDS vapor diluted in N_2 gas.

Photoresist Coating

A uniform layer of resist one to two microns thick is coated onto the wafer by first placing two to five cc of resist on the wafer and then spinning it to a final speed of 3,000 to 6,000 rpm. The combination of volume and speed determines the final resist thickness. Current LSI processes require spin speed control of ±10 rpm at 5,000 rpm to achieve ±50 angstroms resist uniformity from wafer to wafer. Uniformity of the resist thickness across the wafer is determined by the flatness of the chuck that supports the wafers and by achieving final spin speed before the surface of the resist dries. The same module can be used for coating both negative and positive resist. During the coating cycle, the wafer is held in a cup that catches the excess resist and carries it to a sump for later removal. Coating modules are the highest maintenance component in automatic photoresist processing equipment.

Soft Bake

Soft bake is used to remove excess solvents and to stabilize resist photosensitivity prior to exposure. Typical temperatures are 70 to 100°C for a 15- to 40-seconds period on a hot plate. Hot plates are typically specified at ±3°C temperature control and ±1°C uniformity. In the 70 to 100°C temperature range, the bake time is not critical in the period between 15 and 90 seconds. Both negative and positive resist respond similarly in soft bake conditions.

Developing

Not all automatic photoresist processing systems include this step. The alternatives are to either immerse the cassette of wafers in developer solution or spray developer solution over the cassette of wafers. However, it is generally accepted that single wafer developing

as done in track-type systems results in better control of line width. To develop a wafer in a track system, it is loaded onto a holder inside a bowl where developer solution is sprayed over the surface until it is completely covered. It is left with the developer puddled on it until completion of the developing process (15 to 25 seconds). It is then rinsed off with water and spun dry. Since developing is a chemical dissolution process, it is temperature sensitive. Variation in temperature during developing can result in incomplete development or variation in line width. As a result, developers are now available with temperature controlled solution and rinse. Positive and negative resist can be developed similarly on track equipment.

Hard Bake

This step is most commonly used in negative resist processing to increase the adhesion of resist to the wafer before it goes into wet etch solutions. When wafers are to be wet etched in cassettes, it is common to batch hard bake wafers in ovens. The hard bake step is also used in positive resist processing. Recently, hard bake has been combined with deep UV exposure into a single step for stabilizing resist dimensions prior to high-temperature processing plasma etching or heavy dose implants. Hard bake temperatures are typically 140 to 200°C; the deep UV wavelengths are below 3,000 angstroms.

Post-Exposure Bake

The primary application of this process is to reduce the standing waves generated in photoresist by single wavelength exposure used on some steppers. The process also reduces exposure time, thus enhancing stepper throughput but extending developing times. Post-exposure bake has so far been used primarily in fabrication of very close tolerance devices.

Driving Forces

The driving forces behind changes in automatic photoresist processing equipment are similar to those for other fabrication equipment. They are for improvements in:

- Maintainability and reliability, to increase equipment utilization
- Flexibility and modularity to adapt to process changes
- Capacity per square foot to allow maximum output from a given clean room space

- Contamination level and particulate generation to increase yields of VLSI production

- Ability to produce and control finer lines in photoresist

The evolution of wafer size through six inches has not caused a significant change in photoresist processing equipment.

The various semiconductor manufacturing segments have slightly different needs with respect to automatic photoresist processing equipment, depending upon the needs of their own markets. U.S. merchant and large captive suppliers are putting a heavy emphasis on capacity per square foot, process control, and contamination control. U.S. custom and small captive suppliers are interested in process flexibility and maintainability. Japanese manufacturers, who possess both merchant and captive characteristics, emphasize process and contamination control. European manufacturers consume only a small portion of the equipment and seem to have no particular equipment emphasis.

Technology Changes

Bake

The most significant change in automatic photoresist processing equipment since 1980 is the emergence of the hot plate as the standard method for dehydration, soft bake, and hard bake of wafers. The overall length of a hot plate module is 18 inches versus 54 inches for standard belt ovens. This results in significantly shorter processing systems. The other advantage of the hot plate bake is the reduction of processing time. Typical bake times on hot plates are less than one minute, while belt ovens need six minutes to produce similar results. In addition, since hot plate designs have fewer moving parts, they generate fewer particles and require less service.

The effective integration of photoresist processing systems and align/expose tools has been made possible by the use of the hot plate. Through an integrated system, the hot plate reduces throughput time to seven to ten minutes--about the same time it takes to get through a coat bake cycle using belt ovens. The short throughput time keeps the work in progress (WIP) to a low level because inspection of a wafer can occur in less than 10 minutes after it is started in the coating cycle.

Single-Track Systems

For small semiconductor manufacturers, the single-track automatic photoresist processing system has made it possible to distribute risk over several systems.

Automatic Photoresist Processing Equipment

Where a large semiconductor manufacturer may have several three- or four-track coat/bake systems to meet its needs, a small custom fab company may need only two tracks of capacity. If these two tracks are in the same cabinet and share the same electronics, there is relatively high risk that both tracks could go down at the same time, leaving no coating capacity. With the growth of captive and custom semiconductor manufacturing, we have seen the success of these single track photoresist processing systems. Single tracks are also used in integration with align/expose tools.

Resist Types

Both positive and negative resist can be processed on almost identically configured automatic photoresist processing equipment. Frequently, equipment is purchased to run both types, although not on the same mask layer. Positive resist represents approximately one-third of the photoresist volume consumed in semiconductors, but because it is three times more expensive than negative, it represents about equal dollars in sales. The different uses of the two types of resist are based on line width. For narrow lines of less than 3u, positive resist is predominant. This is because negative resist is subject to swelling, higher levels of defects, and reduced adhesion, making it less attractive for fine lines.

The developing bowl is the one area in photoresist processing equipment where changes are made to accommodate special needs. For bowls designed for developing positive resists, care must be taken in draining the condensed developer solution to ensure that it does not either splatter or drip back on the front or back side of the wafer. The developer for positive resist is a dissolved alkaline salt. When it dries, it leaves a crystal deposit which, if on the front surface of the wafer, will generate a defect during dry etch. If it is on the back, it may outgas and contaminate an implant.

Automatic Photoresist Processing Equipment

MARKET FORCES

The size of the market for automatic photoresist processing equipment is determined over a period of time by the wafer start level needed by semiconductor manufacturers to meet the demand for components. The number of masking steps required to finish a device is growing with the need to put more components on a chip. In addition, the flexibility of some functions (gate arrays) can be greatly enhanced by the use of a second layer of metal interconnects. Additional services added to automatic photoresist processing systems are: dehydration (done in the past in a batch form), scrubbing, post-exposure bake (a new step that enhances stepper throughput), and deep UV resist hardening. These new services increase total dollar sales per track system. As the demand for semiconductors flattens in weak economic periods, manufacturers reduce wafer starts. This generally increases wafer sort yield, further reducing the need for wafer starts. As a result, the demand for capacity-sensitive fab equipment such as tracks is greatly reduced. During the period from 1980 to 1982, when semiconductor sales were near flat, the automatic photoresist processing equipment market was down and was largely supported by captive and custom manufacturers rather than by the merchant semiconductor manufacturers. The exception to this was the Japanese semiconductor manufacturers, who continued to purchase equipment during this period.

Market Analysis

The installed base of automatic photoresist equipment can be estimated by computing the number of tracks that would be necessary to process the worldwide semiconductor production. As a predictor of sales on a yearly basis, this type of analysis is not very accurate. It does not take into account the fluctuations that come from excess capacity in times of recession, or advanced buying in times of increased sales. A much better predictor is a regression analysis using the appropriate independent variables. DATAQUEST has analyzed the market using both methods, and the results are reported in the following sections.

Multiple Regression Analysis

The historical yearly equipment sales were regressed against U.S. revenues and yearly percent change in revenues. The justification for this analysis follows. If the sales revenue were a continuous function, the regression could be converted into a nonhomogenous first order differential equation.

$$Y = A + BS = CS' \qquad \text{Eq. 1}$$

Where A, B, C are constants
S is sales
S' is rates of sales
Y is equipments sales

Equation 1 depicts equipment sales as a function of both semiconductor sales volume and sales growth. This is true in both up periods and down periods. By using the method of least squares, a statistical relationship is found that fits the equipment data to the sales data so that the rate of sales is the average yearly growth. This analysis yielded an R^2 correlation of 98.1 percent. The constants of the regression and the results are represented in Table 1.

The compound annual growth rate (CAGR) from 1974 to 1988 is 35 percent; the CAGR from 1983 to 1988 is 27 percent. The best fit occurred when the sales growth data led the equipment sales by 12 months. Figure 3 shows the actual equipment sales data versus the computed data over the 14-year period from 1974 to 1983.

Table 1

REGRESSION ANALYSIS

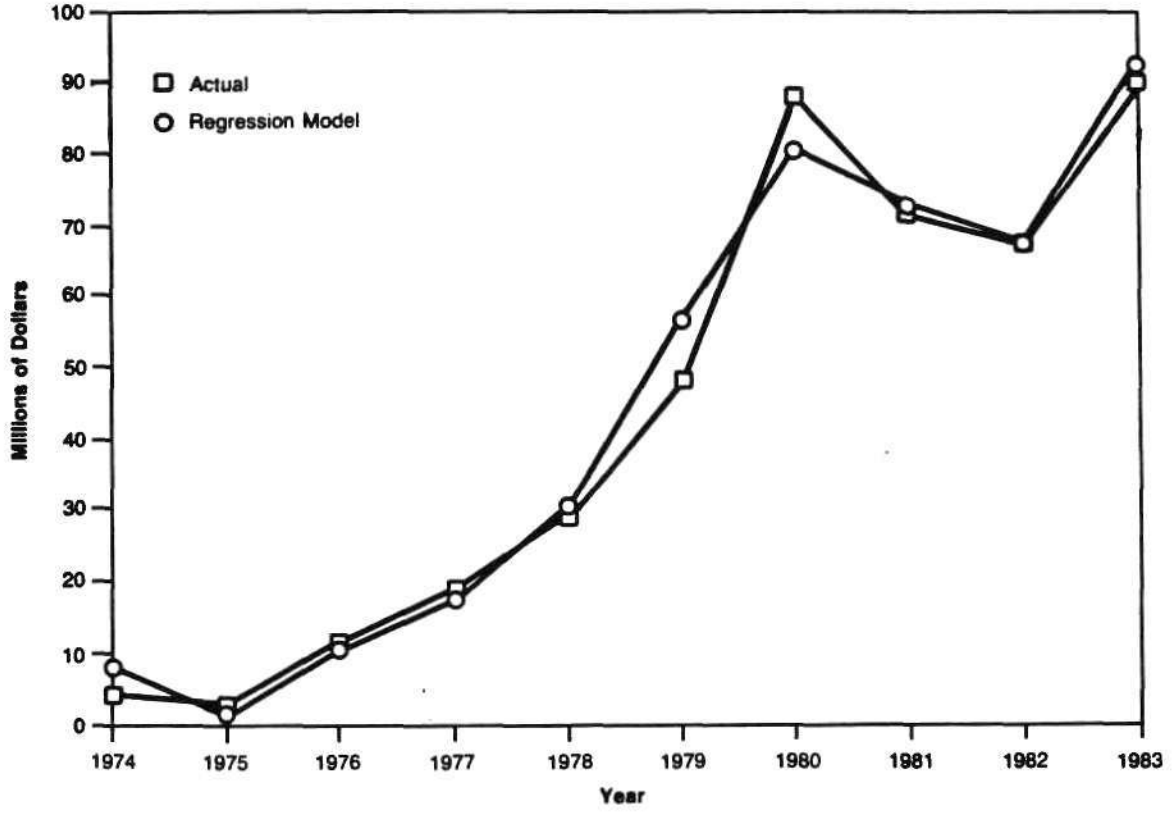
Year	Sales	Growth	Computed	Variance
1974	$ 4.2		$ 14.4	2.42
1975	2.5	(40%)	$ 0.7	-0.72
1976	11.4	365%	$ 23.7	0.07
1977	18.9	66%	$ 30.3	.60
1978	28.9	53%	$ 11.8	-0.59
1979	48.1	66%	$ 58.5	0.22
1980	88.0	83%	$ 74.5	-0.15
1981	72.0	(18%)	$ 76.4	0.06
1982	67.0	(7%)	$ 60.9	0.09
1983	90.0	34%	$107.2	0.19
1984e	137.1	41%		
1985e	189.2	11%		
1986e	221.6	17%		
1987e	230.9	17%		
1988e	294.5	29%		
Total	$1,504.3			

e = estimated

Source: DATAQUEST

Figure 3

PHOTORESIST EQUIPMENT ANALYSIS
(Actual vs. Regression Model)



Source: DATAQUEST

Engineering Analysis

The number of wafer starts per year is a gross indicator of track demand. To obtain the historical and forecasted wafer starts, we regressed the inches of silicon processed per dollar of worldwide semiconductor revenue (in.^{2}/rev) against time and yearly changes in sales revenue. This multiple regression yielded an 80 percent R^2 correlation. Then using forecasted worldwide semiconductor sales, we obtained in.^{2}/rev for the analysis period. We then computed the yearly wafer starts for the period using the historical and forecasted percentages of wafer sizes by area.

By estimating the historical values of throughput, average mask layers per wafer, average shifts per day, and equipment use (accounting for scheduled and unscheduled downtime), the total number of tracks required to process the historical and forecasted wafer starts could be calculated. In our study, we increased the throughput and mask layers on a yearly basis to keep pace with equipment improvements and device complexity. Limiting our time-dependent variables imposes some inaccuracy into the model by not accounting for variations in shifts per day and for use that occurs during business fluctuations. However, these variations tend to even out over time so that our analysis gives a good benchmark for equipment demand.

The total market was determined by segmenting the track calculations into coaters and developers and then assigning average sales prices (ASPs) over the period. Since about one-half of the develop process is done in the batch mode, the develop segment was one-half of the coater segment. We increased the ASPs by 10 percent per year to match historical price increases. Since the analysis was based on worldwide merchant sales, a 20 percent adjustment was made to the totals to account for track purchases by captive manufacturers. The final step in the analysis was to account for equipment replacements by amortizing a given year's equipment sales (with a 10 percent yearly inflation increase) over the next five years and adding it to the totals. Table 2 presents the variables of the analysis and the results.

Table 2

ENGINEERING ANALYSIS

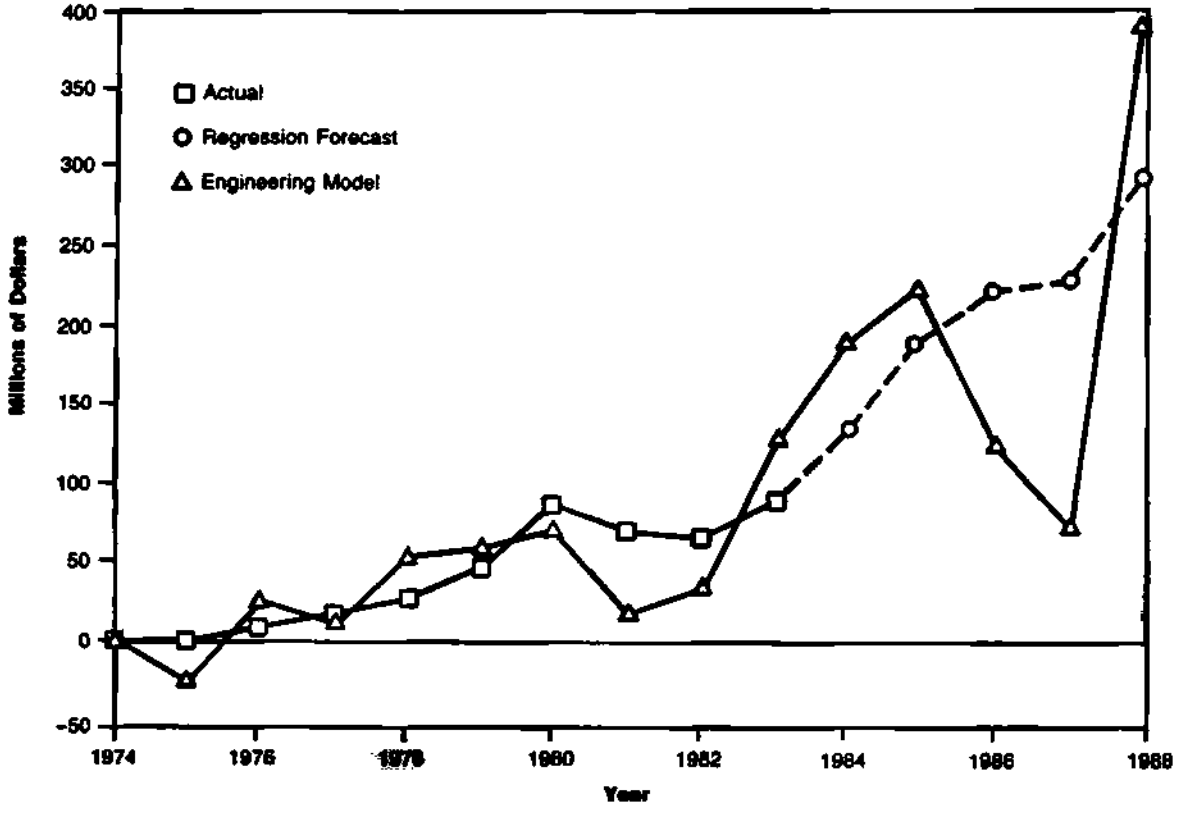
Year	Tracks: Required Installed Base	ASP	Equivalent Track Sales	Throughput	Masks
1974			$ 4.2		
1975	(932)	$26,435	(23.7)	44	7.4
1976	1,076	$29,079	26.9	46	7.6
1977	313	$31,987	12.1	48	7.8
1978	1,432	$35,186	54.8	50	8.0
1979	1,153	$38,704	60.6	52	8.2
1980	1,104	$42,575	72.9	54	8.4
1981	(622)	$46,832	18.4	56	8.6
1982	16	$51,515	35.6	58	8.8
1983	1,624	$56,667	127.0	60	9.0
1984	2,415	$62,333	191.4	62	9.2
1985	2,359	$68,567	224.0	64	9.4
1986	516	$75,423	126.3	66	9.6
1987	(521)	$82,966	71.8	68	9.8
1988	2,998	$91,261	390.3	70	10.0
Total			$1,392.6		

Source: DATAQUEST

The total accumulated sales over 14 years of $1,392.6 million represents the industry capacity requirements. This sum was used as a check against the results of the regression analysis. Figure 4 shows the results from this analysis versus both the actual data and the forecast from 1974 to 1988.

Figure 4

PHOTORESIST EQUIPMENT
(Actual vs. Engineering Model)



Source: DATAQUEST

CONCLUSIONS

The results of the two analyses with respect to total equipment expenditures over the period ($1,393 million for the engineering model and $1,504 million for the regression) agree quite closely. The inherent inaccuracies in both methods seem to smooth out over the 14-year period that we studied. It is quite probable that photoresist equipment will grow in the 25 percent to 27 percent range predicted by both models during the next five years.

In Figure 4, we show the comparison of the engineering model with the actual and forecasted data. The regression predicts steady growth during the period from 1983 to 1984. However, the engineering model predicts a drastic reduction in growth in 1986 and 1987. The cause of this reduction is a combination of increased movement into six-inch wafers and a business downturn. In a similar period from 1981 to 1982, the model predicted a drastic downturn. It was the emergence of ASIC (application specific integrated circuit) markets and the presence of foreign markets that improved the negative effect of the business cycle. The existence of this downturn in the engineering model should serve as a warning to photoresist equipment manufacturers. It will be important for vendors to capitalize on technologies and markets that may have a similar positive effect during this period.

Future Trends

Semiconductor equipment suppliers are being asked to deliver equipment that is smaller and easier to maintain, with cleaner and better controlled process results. From those driving forces, these changes will probably occur:

- Single-track systems will be the leading system configuration. These systems will be two to three process modules long. They will be modular in order to form any process sequences desired by the semiconductor manufacturers. Each process module will be pluggable into these systems.

- The systems will be capable of being rolled out of the fab area for service.

- The systems will have added instrumentation to replace the eyes and ears of the operator as the primary monitor. These will be (1) a thickness monitor on photoresist following coat, (2) end-point detection on the developer modules, and (3) sensors to predict component failures such as a power monitor on spin motors to detect excessive drag.

- Local environmental control for keeping the air clean around the wafer area will be part of the system. This is only practical with single track systems.

- Part of the track business will disappear as a separate item in sales. It will be integrated with an aligner-expose tool and inspection station that will be delivered as a unit, with one vendor taking responsibility for the system results. These systems will be configured to produce the best financial results for making discretes, ICs, and LSI functions.

DATA

Table 3 shows DATAQUEST's estimate of sales for automatic photoresist processing systems by equipment vendor, and a summary of worldwide sales across all vendors. Sales declined two years in a row for the period 1980-1981 and 1981-1982. In 1983, sales were back up strongly, even though bookings for new photoresist processing equipment did not start accelerating until the beginning of the third quarter.

The sales slump for new equipment would have been more severe except for the strong emergence of custom and gate array semiconductor manufacturers who purchased equipment with investors' money rather than from sales income. The other U.S. purchasers during this period were the captive manufacturers who were putting an IC capability in place rather than making a capacity change to meet increased volume.

Table 4 lists sales of automatic photoresist processing equipment by regions of the world. Japan was the only area that had increasing sales during the period covered. Japanese sales do not include internal manufacturing of equipment done by Hitachi, NEC, and Toshiba. Since these three companies represent about half the semiconductor manufacturing capability in Japan, the actual quantity of systems consumed is twice that represented in the sales figures in Table 4.

European sales follow the trend of U.S. sales, partly because the final usage of the equipment is, to a large extent, controlled by the parent U.S. companies that operate manufacturing facilities in Europe.

DATAQUEST's estimate of the future worldwide sales of automatic photoresist processing equipment is given in Table 5. Sales in 1984 are expected to be $137.1 million, up from $90 million for 1983. We expect sales to grow again in 1985 to $189.2 million, to meet the burgeoning demand for semiconductors. Sales in 1986 and 1987 will grow more slowly, as demand for semiconductors flattens during this period. In 1988, sales

will probably increase as semiconductor sales start to accelerate again. We might add that this model uses a regression analysis with 98 percent correlation. Such a model does not take into account changes in future technology, such as automation and integration of processing steps. The accuracy of the model will be maintained if such technology changes produce the same impact as historical technology changes.

Table 3

ESTIMATED WORLDWIDE AUTOMATIC PHOTORESIST PROCESSING EQUIPMENT FACTORY SHIPMENTS (Millions of Dollars)

	1980	1981	1982	1983
U.S.				
Eaton	24	18	9	10
GCA	35	22	19	22
Machine Technology	4	6	8	8
Semiconductor Systems	-	-	-	1
Silicon Valley Group	4	8	11	17
Solitec	-	-	-	1
Veeco	9	4	3	4
Japanese				
Dianippon Screen	9	10	12	18
Tokyo Electron	2	3	4	7
European				
Convac	1	1	1	2
Total	88	72	67	90

Source: DATAQUEST

Table 4

ESTIMATED WORLDWIDE AUTOMATIC PHOTORESIST
PROCESSING EQUIPMENT CONSUMPTION
BY GEOGRAPHIC AREA
(Millions of Dollars)

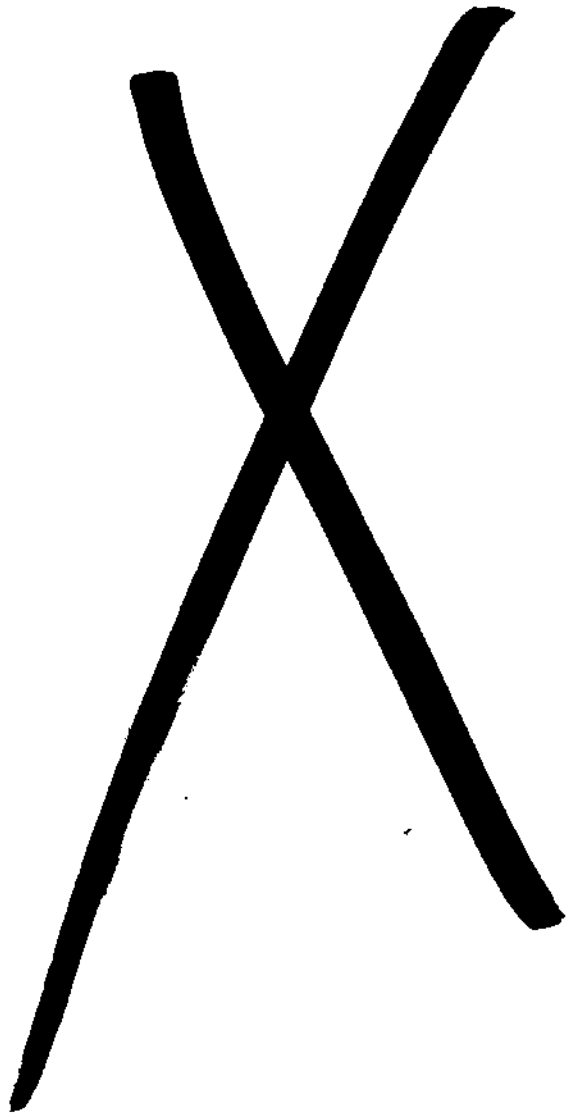
	1980	1981	1982	1983
U.S.	$62	$42	$40	$49
Japan	16	16	20	33
Europe	10	14	7	8
Total	$88	$72	$67	$90

Table 5

ESTIMATED FUTURE WORLDWIDE SALES
(Millions of Dollars)

1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
$137.1	$189.2	$221.6	$230.9	$294.5

Source: DATAQUEST



Trends in Foundries

INTRODUCTION

Before discussing current and emerging trends in foundries, a short introduction is appropriate. The concept of a silicon foundry, often referred to as customer-owned tooling or COT, involves the manufacture by merchant semiconductor companies of custom circuits whose designs are provided by the customer. The customer has elected, often for reasons of maintaining proprietary product know-how, to control the design phase, engaging a semiconductor manufacturer to actually manufacture the product. This design-to-manufacturer interface most often occurs at mask generation or design data base level after the customer has completed logic and electrical design and IC geometric design. After the design is completed, the computer file that describes the IC design is conveyed to the semiconductor manufacturing company for tooling (to match its manufacturing processes), wafer fabrication, and, normally, assembly and testing (for volume circuits). Sometimes the customer company will do its own assembly and testing. Prototyping, design, and manufacturing verification occur before volume production is begun, a period from as little as a few weeks to several months, depending on chip and system product complexity. The major issues include not only chip functionality and testing, but also manufacturability (hence cost) as controlled by design margins (i.e., actual versus expected yield for a given chip size).

The driving force behind the growth of foundries is the forecast demand for custom and semicustom circuits. DATAQUEST projects that these types of circuits will increase to approximately half of all ICs produced by the end of the decade. This growth is projected to occur because of the accelerating trend to full utilization of computer-aided design/computer-aided engineering (CAD/CAE) for new product development.

Powerful new CAD/CAE systems are making it possible not only for custom and semicustom circuits to be designed more efficiently by semiconductor manufacturers, but also for design engineers outside of the semiconductor industry to design complex integrated circuits. There are new engineers from more than 50 universities where Meade/Conway "originated" VLSI design is taught, and there are also tens of thousands of existing design engineers. These engineers will be helped by the new CAD/CAE systems.

Secondly, the increasing trend in IC density has made it possible to design complex ICs that contain a significant percentage of the logic of electronic systems. In turn, designs can still provide very useful levels of performance and integration without pushing the limits of technology.

Semicustom and custom circuits make it possible to improve end-product performance, provide product differentiation--often with proprietary features--and reduce product cost through reduced component count and greater reliability.

Trends in Foundries

Foundry of Old

In the past, it was the middle-sized systems companies that participated in the design of circuits and then sought production in a foundry. These companies were large enough to have in-house IC design groups of skilled IC designers, but not large enough to have internal captive production lines. The larger systems companies with captive lines, however, required second-sourcing.

Another design source was the semiconductor company that developed chips specifically for its customer, which in turn required second sourcing production by another manufacturer.

Foundry of the Future

There are two key elements in the definition of a foundry of the future. First, the wafer processing must be standard. Second, the foundry will sell wafers to the process-control monitor's (PCM) specifications. DATAQUEST believes that the silicon foundry operator of the future is aiming for the following:

- A facility that accepts designs to be fabricated according to a standard set of specifications encompassing design rules and process control monitors in a standard data exchange format

- A facility that can accept designs electronically, such as over phone lines, rather than via magnetic tape or disk packs

- A facility where the customer can get any quantity of circuits fabricated from very small to very large volumes. The decision to proceed with a custom design should not be dependent on how many chips the foundry operator wants to make.

In order to make the silicon foundry a success, one must have a well-understood set of specifications and control monitors. The computer tapes from a customer who provides a design to the silicon foundry must follow the design rules of the manufacturer. One of the key items mentioned above is electronics--namely, the electronic submittal of the data. This is a very important criterion for the future, since by submitting the data electronically, there are fewer possibilities of loss due to physical problems of the mail system or courier handling. Sometimes, the biggest problem is having the magnetic tape read by the semiconductor manufacturer. At least one company, VLSI Technology, Inc., is preparing an electronic interface to accept remote transmission of designs and ultimately to supply device status back to the customer over a dedicated network.

Trends in Foundries

Today, customers that are approaching the foundry manufacturers for custom circuits are becoming more sophisticated. Originally, the customer came to the foundry manufacturer to be completely educated regarding the foundry's requirements. Today, the customer in many cases will bring tooling (masks), and in many cases test programs. This, of course, frees up the semiconductor manufacturer's very valuable engineering talent, thus substantially reducing costs and time required to produce processed wafers and, ultimately, finished devices.

One of the newest concepts in the foundry is the use of shared silicon, where more than one design, whether or not it belongs to the same customer, is fabricated on the same wafer. The concept of shared silicon has been popularized at some universities where a multichip approach has been used to provide insight into integrated system design for multiproject, graduate level classes.

Although it is still not common, several foundries have done essentially what has been done in the universities; that is, they have produced several different designs on one wafer. This type of wafer sharing allows prototype quantities to be run at low cost. Of course, this wafer sharing assumes that the different manufacturers' chips have followed the same standard design rules. Obviously, going the shared silicon route can reduce the up-front cost to individual customers by as much as 25 percent, because the expensive process of developing a mask set (typically $32,000) is shared by four designs on the wafer. Shared silicon, however, is ideal for customers who want only 50 or 100 devices. If a customer requires 1,000 devices or more, a crossover is reached and it then makes sense to go to a nonshared basis.

Is there hope for the very small customer? Yes, but for very low volume jobs, such as 20 or fewer devices, the number of available foundries falls off sharply. One alternative, though, is to go to a "commercial silicon broker." Synmos, one of the first of these brokers, will return 10-silicon-gate, 5-micron-design-rule, NMOS package devices, with verified fabrication but without functional testing of the devices, for $3,000. The die size is 150 $mils^2$; other die sizes are priced accordingly.

Today there are more than 40 separate manufacturers that are offering silicon foundry processing (see Table 1). The technologies are CMOS, NMOS, PMOS, and bipolar. The technologies can also be either metal gate or silicon gate. The list ranges from companies as small as Acrian to ones as large as National Semiconductor. The typical dimensions today are in the three- and four-micron range; however, companies such as Harris will process wafers to two microns using their SAJI (self-align junction isolated CMOS). Harris can also produce bipolar devices with features as fine as two microns. Formerly, these very narrow line widths were reserved for a particular company's own devices. However, many of

Table 1

SILICON FOUNDRY OPERATIONS

Acrian Inc.
10131 Bubb Road
Cupertino, CA 95014
(408) 996-8522

American Microsystems, Inc.
(A Division of Gould, Inc.)
3800 Homestead Road
Santa Clara, CA 95051
(408) 246-0330

ASEA HAFO
U.S. Sales Office
66 Bovet Road
San Mateo, CA 94402
(415) 574-5400

Cherry Semiconductor Corp.
2000 South Country Trail
East Greenwich, RI 02818
(401) 885-3600

CSI Technology Services
(Comdial Semiconductor, Inc.)
1230 Bordeaux Drive
Sunnyvale, CA 94086
(408) 744-1800

Dionics
65 Rushmore Steet
Westbury, NY 11590
(516) 997-7474

EXAR Integrated Systems, Inc.
750 Palomar Avenue
Sunnyvale, CA 94088
(408) 732-7970

Four-Phase Systems, Inc.
(A Subsidiary of Motorola, Inc.)
10700 North De Anza Blvd.
Cupertino, CA 95014
(408) 255-0900

General Instrument Corp.
Microelectronics Division
600 West John Street
Hicksville, NY 11802
(516) 733-3000

GTE Microcircuits
2000 West 14th
Tempe, AZ 85281
(602) 968-4431

Hughes Aircraft Company
Solid State Products Division
500 Superior Avenue
Newport Beach, CA 92663

Intel Corporation
5000 W. Williamsfield Road
Chandler, AZ 85224
(602) 961-2658

International Microelectronics
Products (IMP)
2830 North First Steet
San Jose, CA 92663
(408) 262-9100

Intersil, Inc.
(A Division of General Electric)
10710 North Tantau Avenue
Cupertino, CA 95014
(408) 996-5000

Micrel, Inc.
1235 Midas Way
Sunnyvale, CA 94086
(408) 245-2500

Micro-Circuit Engineering, Inc.
1111 Fairfield Drive
West Palm Beach, FL 33407
(305) 845-2837

(Continued)

Table 1 (Continued)

SILICON FOUNDRY OPERATIONS

Mitel Semiconductor
Box 13320
Kanata, Ontario
Canada K2K 1X5
(613) 592-5630

Monosil, Inc.
975 Comstock Street
Santa Clara, CA 95050
(408) 727-6562

Mosfet Micro Labs, Inc.
Penn Center Plaza
Quakertown, PA 18951
(215) 536-2104

National Semiconductor
2900 Semiconductor Drive
Santa Clara, CA 95051
(408) 737-6055

Nitron
10420 Bubb Road
Cupertino, CA 95014
(408) 225-7550

Plessey Semiconductors
1641 Kaiser Avenue
Irvine, CA 92714
(714) 540-9979

Polycore Electronics, Inc.
1107 Tourmaline Drive
Newbury Park, CA 91320
(805) 498-8832

RCA
Route 202
Somerville, NJ 08876
(201) 685-6798

Semi Processes Inc.
1885 Norman Avenue
Santa Clara, CA 95050
(408) 988-4004

Senitron Corporation
3883 North 28th Avenue
Phoenix, AZ 85017
(602) 277-3481

Signetics Corporation
811 E. Arques Avenue
P.O. Box 409
Sunnyvale, CA 94086
(408) 746-1855

Silicon Systems, Inc.
14351 Myford Road
Tustin, CA 92580
(714) 731-7110

Solid State Scientific, Inc.
Montgomeryville Industrial Ctr.
Montgomeryville, PA 18936
(215) 855-8400

Solitron Devices, Inc.
8808 Balboa
San Diego, CA 92123
(714) 278-8780

Standard Microsystems Corp.
35 Marcus Boulevard
Hauppauge, NY 11787
(516) 273-3100

Storage Technology Corp.
2320C Walsh Avenue
Santa Clara, CA 95051
(408) 727-3503

(Continued)

Table 1 (Continued)

SILICON FOUNDRY OPERATIONS

Supertex, Inc.
1225 Bordeaux Drive
Sunnyvale, CA 94086
(408) 744-0100

Syntertek, Inc.
(A subsidiary of Honeywell, Inc.)
3001 Stender Way
Santa Clara, CA 95051
(408) 988-5600

Univeral Semiconductor, Inc.
1925 Zanker Road
San Jose, CA 95112
(408) 279-2830

VLSI Technology, Inc.
1101 McKay Drive
San Jose, CA 95131
(408) 942-1810

ZYMOS
P.O. Box 62379
Sunnyvale, CA 94088
(408) 730-8800

Source: DATAQUEST

these companies have been forced by the competition to produce devices utilizing the finer geometries. Signetics appears to offer the tightest measurement in the merchant market--one micron for bipolar devices.

Looking at the foundry from the customer's point of view, there are many different ways that a design can be generated. The customer may generate the design alone, using the foundry's manufacturing design rule, may generate the design jointly with the foundry, or may contract with one of the many independent IC designers who are familiar with the design rules of a particular foundry manufacturer. The foundry manufacturer will find this third option to be the most advantageous because the independent designer has in many cases worked very closely with a particular manufacturer and is very knowledgeable about the design rules.

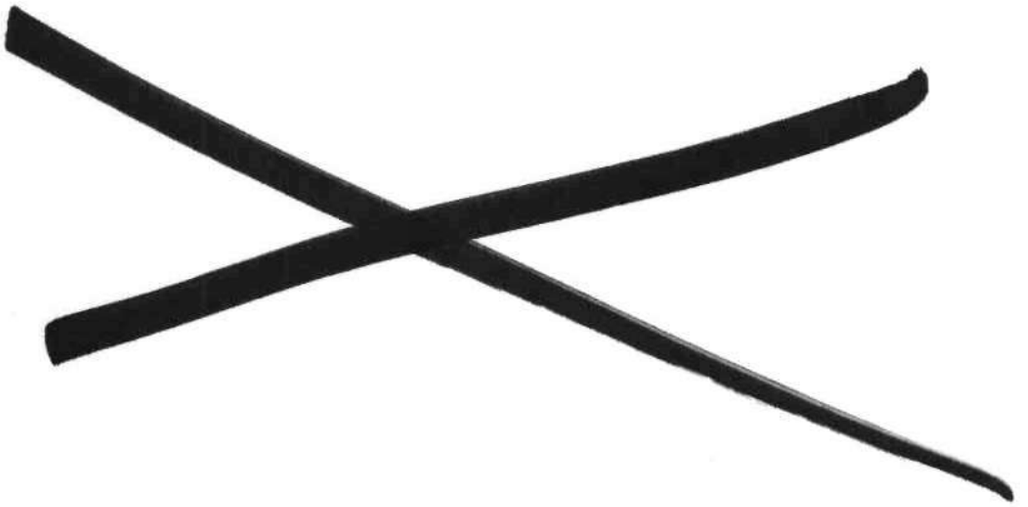
Although efforts clearly are being made to improve the interface between designers and foundries, many problems still remain. For example, some foundries offer state-of-the-art processing to outside designers but will not release design rules for any but their most mature processes. Today, nothing exists that even remotely approaches a standard data interchange format. Some companies prefer high-level descriptions (CIF, Calma Format). Others want tooling (masks) only. Nor is there any consensus about whether the designer or the manufacturer (foundry) should provide the process-control monitor (PCM). In some cases, two PCMs end up on wafers--further reducing the amount of wafer area available for useful dies. Unfortunately, instead of using a universal PCM, most chip fabricators have a "pet PCM" that is modified for their specific process or fab. Another major area of difference from one foundry to the next is "back-end" services. Some foundries consider their job done once the wafers meet the PCM criteria, while others have wafer and packaged device testing capabilities. DATAQUEST believes that due to increased competition, more and more foundries will be expanding these back-end services.

We want to also point out that some foundries in the future will try to supply "standard products in software" where portions of a chip are predesigned. The methods that will be utilized will be:

- Standard cells
- Gate arrays
- Meade/Conway-type silicon compilers
- Alterable microprocessors

Lastly, with the emergence of VLSI devices with large pin counts (40 or more), the foundry and its customer are discussing the packaging and testing issues that must be solved. Most approaches being tried are, needless to say, of the trail blazing type. Two solutions currently exist for the over-40 problem: chip carriers and pin-grid arrays. Chip

carriers have terminals on all four sides of the package; these terminals are usually on 50-mil centers. The package may be leadless or leaded. Pin-grid packages have a matrix of 100-mil centers on the bottom, with the pins arranged in rows and columns. DATAQUEST believes that over the next two years the problems with testing and handling these two packages will be resolved as new equipment is developed.



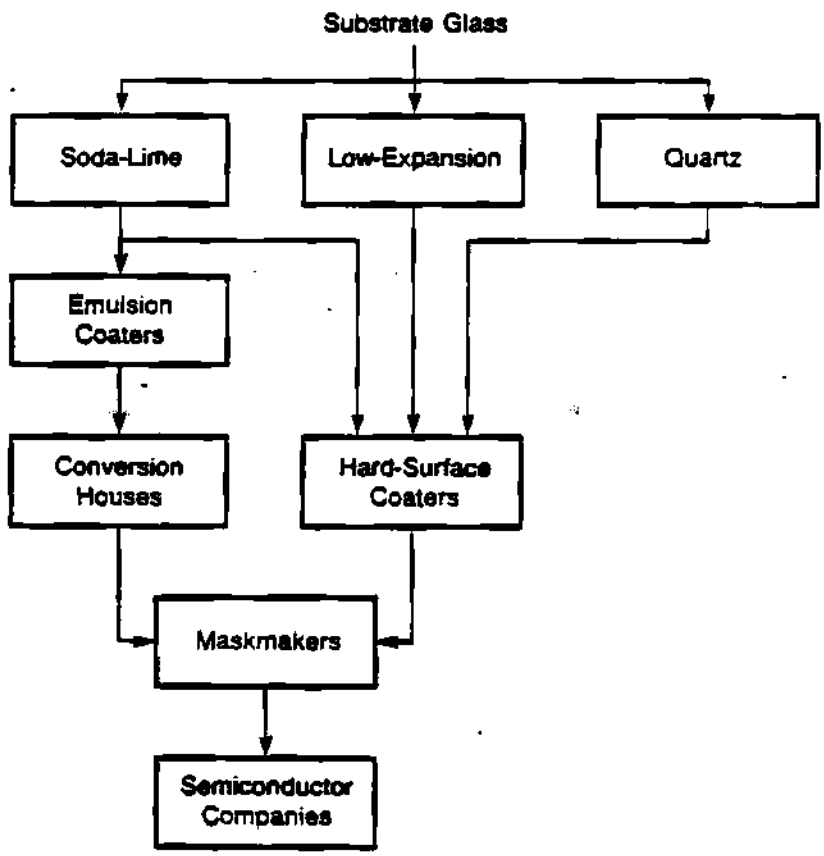
Maskmaking

A recent development that may affect the substrate business is the KLA Image Qualification System. This system detects defects on masks/pellicle assemblies. The system utilizes a glass wafer to verify the actual condition of the mask. This new system allows the verification process to be done in about one-tenth the time that it usually takes. Since these glass wafers currently are being sold by some of the regular chrome blank manufacturers, we believe that this could offer an opportunity for the blank manufacturers to expand their markets. Their customers will be the semiconductor manufacturers who can reuse the blanks, since only six or eight dice need to be stepped on each glass wafer. This item does, however, present some manufacturing problems for blank makers in that the size, both diameter and thickness, must be compatible with standard wafer sizes.

Maskmaking

Figure 3

MASKMAKING SUPPLY FLOWCHART



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1984

Emulsion coaters include major suppliers of materials to the photographic industry, such as Kodak, Konishiroku, and Agfa Gevaert. Since the semiconductor industry consumes only a small portion of the photographic materials produced by these companies, some of the companies do not cater to the industry. Emulsion conversion companies, on the other hand, serve the industry directly. They generally purchase large sheets of emulsion-covered glass and convert them into smaller standard sizes. At the same time, emulsion conversion companies perform an important quality control function.

Maskmaking

The working masks from the E-beam will be used on projection aligners to expose the wafer. The master masks from the photo repeaters can be used directly or can be used to create working submasters for contact, proximity, or projection aligners. The term "tooling plate" has been used to identify any photoplate that is not a working plate; for example, reticles, masters, and submasters are all tooling plates. Working plates are used in factory production of integrated circuits. However, because of the care necessary in preparing working reticles and stepped working plates, these have come to be grouped with tooling.

BLANKS AND SUBSTRATES

Figure 3 presents the relationships between suppliers and customers in the maskmaking industry. Note that photoplates are made from three types of glass: soda-lime, low-expansion (LE), and quartz. Low-expansion glass has been favored for VLSI circuits with smaller critical dimensions because it does not change size with temperature changes as much as soda-lime, and until now, it was much less expensive than quartz. However, the price of quartz has decreased to within 20 percent of LE so that quartz usage is increasing significantly. Quartz glass and LE glass are used in applications in which the photosensitive material on the semiconductor wafer is exposed to ultraviolet light. The short wavelength of ultraviolet light makes it useful for applications with extremely small critical dimensions.

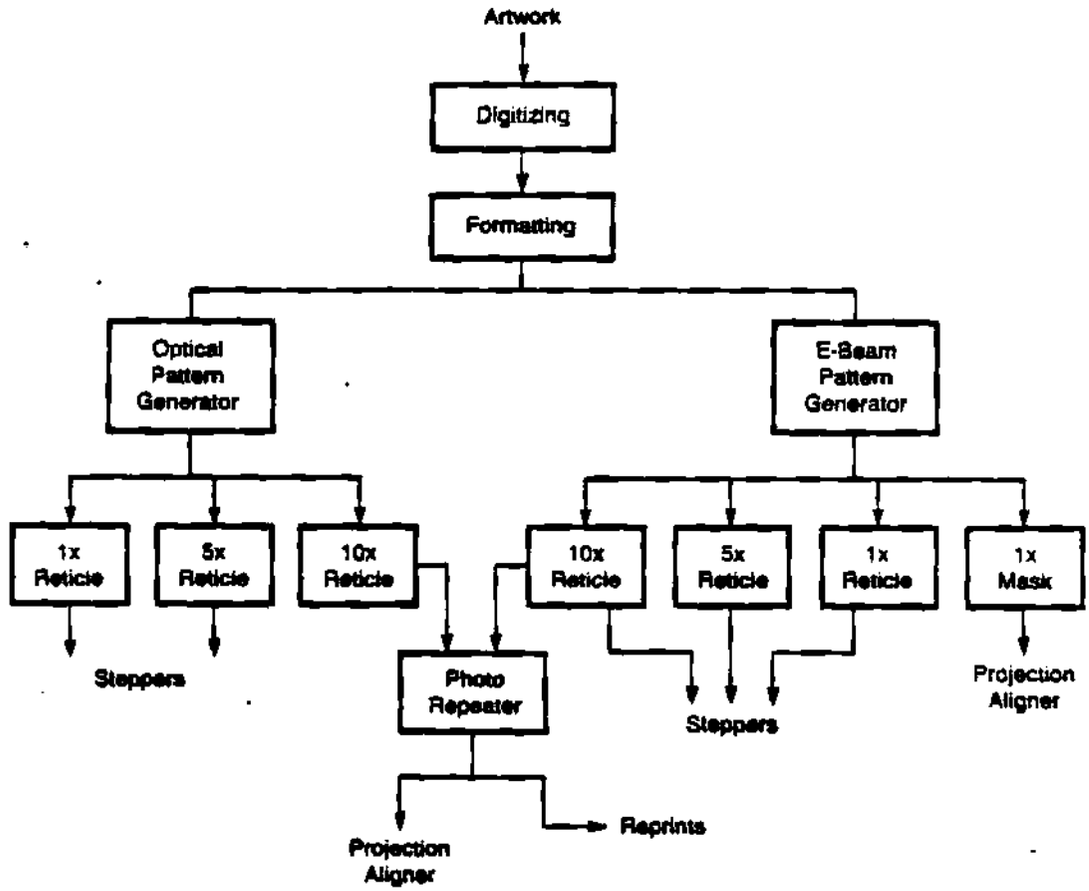
Hoya, SEH, and Toshiba Ceramics are the major suppliers of glass to the maskmaking industry. Hoya supplies soda-lime glass, low-expansion glass (quartz and fused silica), and uncoated glass to the U.S. market. There are five or six times as many quartz blanks consumed in Japan as in the United States. Furthermore, 30 percent of all glass used in Japan is quartz. This indicates that the Japanese are using a high percentage of quartz on contact/proximity aligners and that there is a large flow of material from Japanese hard-surface coating houses into the United States.

In 1983, approximately 25 percent of the total quartz blanks were 4 x 4--5-micron flat. More than 50 percent were 2-micron flat. In 1984, approximately 10 percent of the total were 4 x 4--2-micron flat because 5 x 5--5-micron flat is becoming the dominant size. Because the stepper reticles do not require 2um flatness and because using quartz on contact/proximity aligners does not require 2um flatness, the percentage of less-flat blanks remains relatively high.

Maskmaking

Figure 2

THE MASKMAKING PROCESS

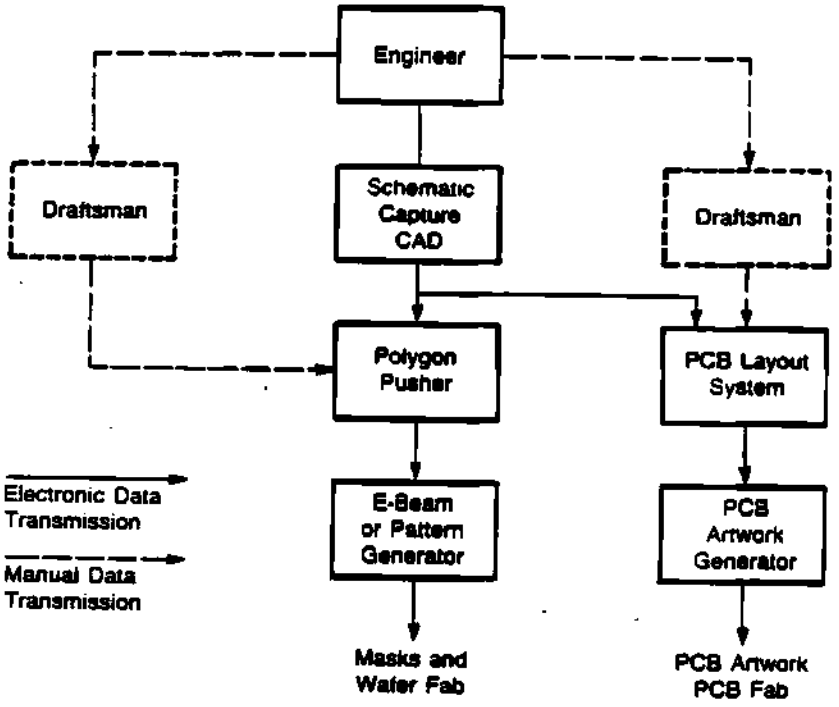


Source: DATAQUEST
December 1984

Maskmaking

Figure 1

SYSTEM DESIGN FLOW WORK



Source: DATAQUEST December 1984

Tooling

Figure 2 shows the steps followed in transferring the digital information onto the tooling that will be used to pattern the wafer.

The digital information from the polygon pushers is used in optical pattern generators (PGs) or electron beam (E-beam) systems to create either reticles or working masks. The reticles may be used on photo repeaters to create 1x master masks or on steppers as working reticles.

Maskmaking

The masking stage of IC manufacturing deals with the transfer of the engineering design to a pattern on the wafer. It involves digitizing the design and creating the tooling, masters, and working plates. The working plates contain the image of the circuit patterns through which light is projected to expose the pattern onto photoresist on the wafer. An integrated circuit requires 7 to 15 masking steps. Each step requires a unique mask in which the patterns are reproduced in emulsion, chrome, chrome oxide, or iron oxide on a coated blank. These patterns must remain intact during the maskmaking process; the mask is ruined if it is scratched, smudged, or contaminated.

PROCESS

Masking comprises the process of transferring the design to the wafer. As such, it contains the elements depicted in Figures 1 and 2.

Digitizing

Figure 1 shows the steps followed in digitizing the circuit pattern. The schematic capture unit works with the designs of the engineers, while the polygon pusher works with the designs of draftsmen. In the IC design process, draftsmen are given a schematic drawn by the engineer and are responsible for turning that schematic into a geometric or topological layout. When a schematic capture unit is used, the engineer inputs his or her design directly into the unit. The unit then simulates the logic to see that it is working correctly and handles any design revisions that might occur. One of the unit's most important functions is to capture any changes and see that they are fully documented.

Once the design is complete and simulated, it can be electronically transmitted to the polygon pusher, or some equivalent device. Here the schematic or logic diagram is either automatically or semiautomatically submitted to a draftsman. However, automatic layout of IC designs generally sacrifices silicon area and must be revised several times for high-production, long-term products. For circuits that are manufactured in low volumes, the trend is to fully automate systems, since area efficiency is not as important as the design time and design cost. We believe that this segment of the IC market will expand rapidly in the next decade, thus leading to an increasing demand for masks.

Technology

Four major technological issues will determine the trends and future structure of the maskmaking industry. They are:

- Evolutions in device manufacturing
- Advances in maskmaking technology
- Evolutions in mask inspection
- Evolutions in mask repair

DEVICE MANUFACTURING

As device manufacturing evolves, the requirements for mask specifications and, therefore, mask manufacturing, will change to satisfy the new technologies.

Lithography

It is obvious that, as more designs satisfy VLSI design rules, more stepper reticles are required. This increases demand for E-beam systems relative to pattern generators. This is verified in Table 1 by comparing actual industry equipment sales. The increased use of steppers also increases the percentage of quartz blanks used and increases the ratio of chrome coatings to emulsions. Since 1980, the increased use of quartz has decreased the average sales price from $800 per coated blank to $105 per coated blank as compared to the $75 price of low-expansion glass.

Table 1

HISTORIC E-BEAM AND PATTERN GENERATOR SALES
(Units)

	1977	1978	1979	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984
E-Beam Shipments	2	9	10	13	14	18	21	26
Pattern Generator Shipments	29	36	48	51	61	71	78	86

Source: DATAQUEST

However, the high use of quartz in Japan is inconsistent with the installed base of lithography equipment, which is predominantly contact/proximity aligners. In spite of the high ratio of contact/proximity aligners, Japanese utilization of quartz is about 30 percent. This compares with about 10 percent for the United States, which uses many more steppers. It appears that Japanese manufacturers routinely use chrome-coated quartz on their contact/proximity aligners, which increases the quality, and thus the yield, of their production.

We believe that the evolution of device geometries to submicron design rules will occur in the 1Mb DRAM (1-micron) shrinks and the 4Mb DRAM (0.7 micron). It is expected that stepper technology will continue to be refined in order to handle the introduction of the 1Mb DRAM, but further shrinks and the 4Mb DRAM may require X-ray or direct-write E-beam technologies. DATAQUEST expects the 1Mb era to begin in 1986, but we expect these products to have little impact on maskmaking until 1987.

Direct Write

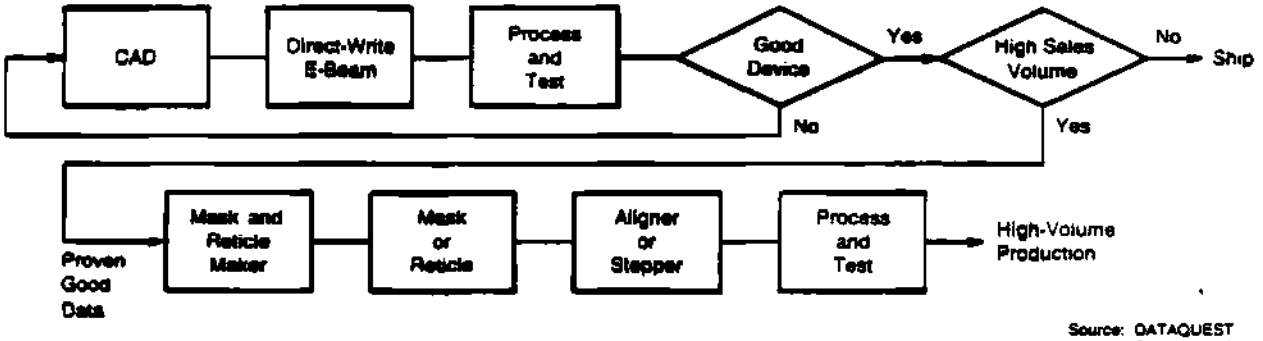
The development of direct-write systems for wafer fabrication will profoundly affect maskmaking. There will be no need for hard blanks, since the tooling will exist only as data on magnetic tape or disks to be used by the direct-write system.

DATAQUEST believes that the first direct-write-on-wafer E-beam systems will divide patterning requirements into two segments: a niche for fast-turn, design-intensive products, and a larger segment for long-run, cost-sensitive products. The flow chart in Figure 1 represents the criteria that will determine each segment. Because of the installed base of aligners that utilize masks, basic economics favor the continued production of tooling and working plates. The movement into direct-writing will be driven by designs that cannot utilize either optical lithography or X-ray technology, or that demand quick turnaround. Therefore, we believe that E-beam direct-write-on-wafer will be relegated to only a small part of the total IC production.

A large impact on maskmaking will come from ion beam lithography (IBL). It is interesting to compare the progression of other lithographic techniques with that of IBL. The advent of steppers was preceded by step-and-repeat cameras for the manufacture of high precision masters masks; i.e., it was maskmaking that provided the experience necessary for steppers to be successful. Likewise, the recent introductions of direct-write-on-wafer E-beam systems have been made possible by the experience gained from the use of E-beam in maskmaking.

Figure 1

DIRECT-WRITE DECISION CRITERIA



Source: DATAQUEST December 1984

DATAQUEST believes that the introduction of IBL for wafer fabrication will come only after the use of IBL in the repair and fabrication of masks. There are ion beam systems available for mask repair, and we believe that it will become a viable, production technology in 1986. However, we expect that it will be at least five years before IBL will begin serious development of direct-write-on-wafer, and 8 to 10 years before production-worthy systems are available.

CAD/CAE

DATAQUEST estimates that sales of schematic capture units and polygon pushers will grow at compound annual growth rates (CAGRs) of 63 percent and 38 percent, respectively, from 1983 to 1988. This growth reflects the trend toward design-intensive products in IC production. The emphasis on design comes from more complicated standard products, in which design efforts increase geometrically, and from application-specific integrated circuits (ASICs), in which response to the customer, and hence design time, becomes paramount.

Since the complexity of ICs is increasing at about 30 percent per year, and the average sales price (ASP) of ICs is relatively constant, the number of mask designs per dollar of IC revenue was decreasing at

about 30 percent per year until 1982. Now, however, the increased capacity of CAD/CAE systems is rapidly increasing the efficiency of design engineers, and designs per dollar are increasing at 15 percent per year.

MASKMAKING

The increasing demand for quick-turn masks and the increasing complexity are changing the technological structure of the maskmaking industry. Emphasis on data handling and data transfer is increasing, the mix of maskmaking equipment is changing, and new types of systems, such as inspection and imaging equipment, are being developed.

Data Handling

Presently, design data comes in several formats, depending on the brand of CAD/CAE equipment. MCC is sponsoring a standardization called EDIF (electronic data interchange format). Standardization will help with the exchange of data for second sourcing and for transferring proprietary designs from system houses to wafer foundries. However, it will not permit the exchange of masking data; only design data is transferred.

Mask data is now carried to the maskmaker on a magnetic tape. The maskmaker then has to format the data for the various mask fabrication and inspection equipment that he has. The merchant shops request that the customer bring data that are formatted for their particular equipment. This is a problem for most customers, since the same design may need to be in two or three formats, depending on the number of suppliers. It is also a problem for the in-house maskmaker because the designer expects the maskmaker to take the data "as is" and make a mask.

There are also problems with data handling that cause the wrong mask to be made or the pattern to be sized improperly. These problems could be solved with better communication between the vendor and the customer. The systemization of data transfer will tend to reduce these types of errors.

One of the more intractable problems is due to rounding off the design data. This problem becomes even more severe as mask imaging dimensions become smaller. As the design data go through the formatting process, each step requires some rounding off of the data. The cumulative error of up-rounding and down-rounding causes the mask to be less accurate.

Technology

Equipment Mix

Optical pattern generators as a percentage of the pattern writing equipment installed base is declining. Our research indicates that 65 percent of all mask/reticle needs currently are being met by E-beam systems. We believe that E-beam maskmaking equipment can handle some 35 to 40 percent more mask layers per year than optical pattern generators. We expect this advantage to increase by a factor of five by 1987, since pattern generator writing time increases as mask layers become more complex, while E-beam writing time generally does not. This should lead to a rapid replacement of optical pattern generators by E-beam equipment. However, if the trend for quick-turn masks and increased demand outstrip the ability of equipment manufacturers to supply E-beam equipment, the sales of pattern generators will decline more slowly.

New Development

New systems are being developed as a response to increased demand for masks, particularly for quick-turn masks. One of these systems is direct-write-on-wafer E-beam. The improvements in writing speeds and E-beam intensities, which give the systems adequate throughputs for wafer fabrication, will also improve the ability to produce masks.

Another new development is the laser pattern generator. These systems currently are being developed by at least two vendors, TRE and GCA. They use a high-intensity laser and can achieve five times the throughput of an E-beam system and ten times the throughput of an optical pattern generator. Technical problems such as pattern and data conversions and source life must be solved, but successful development could drastically alter the economics of maskmaking.

INSPECTION

Most of the production "bottlenecks" occur in the inspection step because of the insufficient number of installed inspection systems. Mask users are demanding complete inspection of the design in the data base rather than die-to-die inspection for defects. Data base inspection affords the user a more accurate and reasonable assurance that the mask from the design is indeed replicated on the plate.

The throughput of the inspection depends to some extent on the size of the defects one wishes to find and on the feature sizes on the mask. Setting stringent inspection criteria can increase the inspection time by four to six times over that of a more relaxed standard.

Technology

Inspection equipment manufacturers are making considerable effort to respond to these problems. In much the same way that electron beam systems have become four times faster in terms of data rate, inspection equipment is becoming faster in terms of data rate. However, data rate does not always increase the inspection time per plate in quite the same geometric relationship. In terms of numbers, the production from one E-beam system for a complex design could utilize five to six inspection systems. Most mask shops are currently utilizing only one or two inspection systems per E-beam system.

Pellicles

A pellicle is a thin, clear film that is stretched and glued over the mask and held in place by a metal frame, usually aluminum. Extreme care is taken to ensure that there is no particulate contamination on the mask when the pellicle is assembled. Since the pellicle thickness is about 5 microns, any particles that land on the assembly will be beyond the focal depth of the mask and will not be exposed onto the photoresist on the wafer.

Pellicles can be installed by either the maskmaker or the user. In some cases, the user buys the mask and pellicle separately so that he can inspect the mask prior to the installation of the pellicle. This is necessary because the optical inspection stations cannot inspect for defects below the surface of the pellicle. Recently, however, systems have been introduced that can inspect through the pellicle. In addition, the KLA Image Qualification System can inspect for defects by exposing a quartz wafer through both the mask and pellicle.

The dominance of stepper and projection aligners is accelerating the usage of pellicles, which could profoundly affect masking. DATAQUEST estimates that 50 percent of current masks are for reprints of current designs. With the proliferation of pellicles, this fraction could fall to 15 to 20 percent.

REPAIR

Due to the increasing costs of mask fabrication and more stringent mask specifications, it has become common for masks and reticles to be repaired. After a mask is fabricated, it is inspected to a set of specifications. These specifications deal with the type, size, and location of defects, as well as the critical dimensions of the mask

itself. The defect specifications usually depend on whether the defect is repeatable, and whether it has an effect on yield. The effect on yield often depends on the type of aligner that will be utilized.

Once the defect has been determined to be repairable and its location is noted by the inspection equipment, the mask is placed in a repair station. The repair station utilizes the data from the inspection equipment to locate the defect. Depending on the brand and sophistication of the inspection system, the defect is classified as to whether it is clear or opaque, or, in some cases, as to whether the defect is merely dirt or some other kind of defect that can be repaired without using the repair station.

The repair stations in current use are called laser zappers because they employ high-intensity laser beams. In the event of an opaque defect, the laser zapper removes the chrome from the glass where it is not wanted. In the event of a clear defect, the plate is temporarily removed from the repair station and a new film of photoresist is spun on the plate. It then is placed back into the repair station and the photoresist is exposed at the location of the defect. The plate is subsequently developed, fresh chrome or some other opaque material is deposited, and the excess photoresist and chrome are removed in a lift-off process.

Systems are currently being developed that will repair both clear and opaque defects. These systems use several different technologies including the laser technology presently being utilized. The main development efforts are concentrating on systems that can repair masks without the need to remove the masks for intermediate steps. The most promising approaches are using ion beams, both focused and unfocused, to either ablate an opaque defect or to damage the blank surface at a clear defect, which renders the surface opaque.

A major issue of mask repair is the transfer of data from the inspection equipment to the repair equipment and the formatting of that data. It is also extremely difficult to design software algorithms that can make judgments about the defect without operator involvement. The newer repair systems tend to have more computing power than earlier systems, which allows for better translation software and more sophisticated decision algorithms. This trend will reduce the dependence on operators for successful repair.

Maskmaking Markets

For the purposes of this report, we define all semiconductor houses, that have their own maskmaking capabilities, both merchant and systems houses, as captive maskmakers. The worldwide market grew 16 percent from 1982 to 1983. This market grew 40 percent from 1983 to 1984 to $1.2 billion, and should grow to $2.8 billion in 1988 representing a 22.3 percent CAGR from 1984 to 1988. Table 1 shows our estimates of the captive and merchant maskmaking market both worldwide and in each of the major geographical regions.

The table uses data compiled from cost-to-revenue ratios for each region. It assumes that the cost ratio in 1984 is 5.3 percent for the United States, Europe, and Rest of World countries, 3.5 percent for Japan, and 7 percent for application-specific IC devices. These ratios vary according to sales fluctuations, since during high growth periods, sales are larger with respect to designs.

Table 1

ESTIMATED WORLDWIDE MASKMAKING PRODUCTION
Merchant and Captive
(Millions of Dollars)

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	CAGR (84-88)
United States	$434	$489	$ 692	$ 725	$ 893	$1,185	$1,572	22.7%
Merchant	72	84	117	158	199	249	319	28.5%
Captive	361	405	575	566	695	935	1,253	21.5%
Japan	$184	$229	$ 317	$ 330	$ 390	$ 497	$ 636	19.1%
Merchant	111	138	190	257	308	371	459	24.6%
Captive	74	92	127	74	82	126	177	8.8%
Europe	$129	$141	$ 199	$ 221	$ 275	$ 361	$ 478	24.5%
Merchant	4	7	10	14	18	23	29	30.4%
Captive	125	134	189	207	257	338	449	24.2%
Rest of World	$ 36	$ 46	$ 64	$ 71	$ 89	$ 115	$ 158	25.5%
Captive	36	46	64	71	89	115	158	25.5%
Worldwide	$783	$906	$1,271	$1,347	$1,647	$2,157	$2,844	22.3%
Merchant	187	229	317	430	525	643	807	26.3%
Captive	596	677	954	918	1,122	1,515	2,037	20.9%

Source: DATAQUEST

Maskmaking Markets

CAPTIVE MASKMAKERS

Approximately 75 percent of the worldwide maskmaking activity is performed by captive maskmakers. We have seen a gradual increase in captive maskmaking as a percentage of the total, but we expect this trend to reverse itself. DATAQUEST estimates that the percentage will fall to 73 percent in 1988.

In the United States, about 83 percent of the maskmaking is captive. Currently, some captive mask shops are selling masks on the open market in the United States; Mostek and Burroughs are examples. This indicates an under capacity for captive maskmakers. This trend is borne out by the slowly increasing share of market for captive shops, particularly when semiconductor sales revenues have been growing rapidly. We believe that these manufacturers are beginning to be at near-full capacity utilization. Although the average utilization for E-beam is still only about 65 percent, the increasing demand placed on E-beam systems by quick-turn products may outpace the ability of equipment vendors to supply these systems.

If supply becomes limited, there will be competition for maskmaking equipment between captives and merchants. We believe that semiconductor manufacturers would rather obtain masks from a competent merchant than to establish a mask shop where one does not exist.

MERCHANT MASKMAKERS

The number of U.S. merchant maskmaking shops has increased slowly over the last 17 years. The recent history is shown in Table 2. There were an estimated eight shops in 1970 and seven more started up between 1970 and 1974. Some shops began in the photoplate business and added reprint and maskmaking services later. During this period, most mask originals were made from rubylith masters. Over the next two years, computer-assisted digitizing and automated pattern generation combined to vastly improve the speed and precision of maskmaking.

Table 2

ESTIMATED U.S. MERCHANT MASK MARKET SHARE
(Millions of Dollars)

	1979	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	CAGR (79-84)
Advanced Reproductions	$ 0.80	$ 1.10	$ 1.30	$ 1.60	$ 1.50	$ 1.50	13.4%
Align-Rite	2.40	2.90	3.80	4.60	6.00	6.10	20.5%
Diamond Images	—	—	—	—	—	0.30	N/A
Dianippon Printing	—	—	—	—	—	2.00	N/A
Electro Mask	2.80	2.00	1.40	0.90	0.80	0.80	(22.2%)
Int. Masking Services	0.80	0.90	1.00	1.20	1.60	2.30	23.5%
Master Images	1.90	3.40	5.10	7.70	11.00	16.00	53.1%
Micro Fab	5.50	6.50	7.20	8.40	9.00	8.50	9.1%
Micro Mask	8.20	9.00	8.10	10.00	10.20	11.00	6.1%
Micro Phase	—	—	—	—	—	0.25	N/A
Photo Sciences	0.70	0.80	1.10	1.60	1.90	2.60	30.0%
Photronics	—	—	—	—	—	8.50	N/A
Qualitron	4.50	5.20	6.00	5.80	7.00	8.00	12.2%
Sierracin	10.70	9.00	7.00	6.00	6.00	7.20	(7.6%)
Toppan	—	—	—	—	—	4.00	N/A
TAU Labs	1.00	1.90	3.80	5.00	7.00	11.20	62.1%
Ultratech	6.00	6.90	10.00	12.60	16.00	20.00	27.2%
Others	4.10	4.50	5.00	6.60	5.80	6.50	9.7%
Total	$49.40	$54.10	$60.80	$72.00	$83.00	$116.75	18.8%

N/A = Not Applicable

Source: DATAQUEST
December 1984

In 1975, Electronic Arrays acquired Monographics. No additional shops entered the business until 1978, when Master Images was formed. In 1980, Sierracin acquired both Transmask and NBK's mask operation, and the Electronic Arrays facility was purchased by International Masking Services. Since then, the following shops have been started:

- Abek, Colorado Springs, Colorado, 1982
- Nanomask, Rousset, France, 1982
- Diamond Images, Los Gatos, California, 1983
- Micro Phase, Albuquerque, New Mexico, 1983

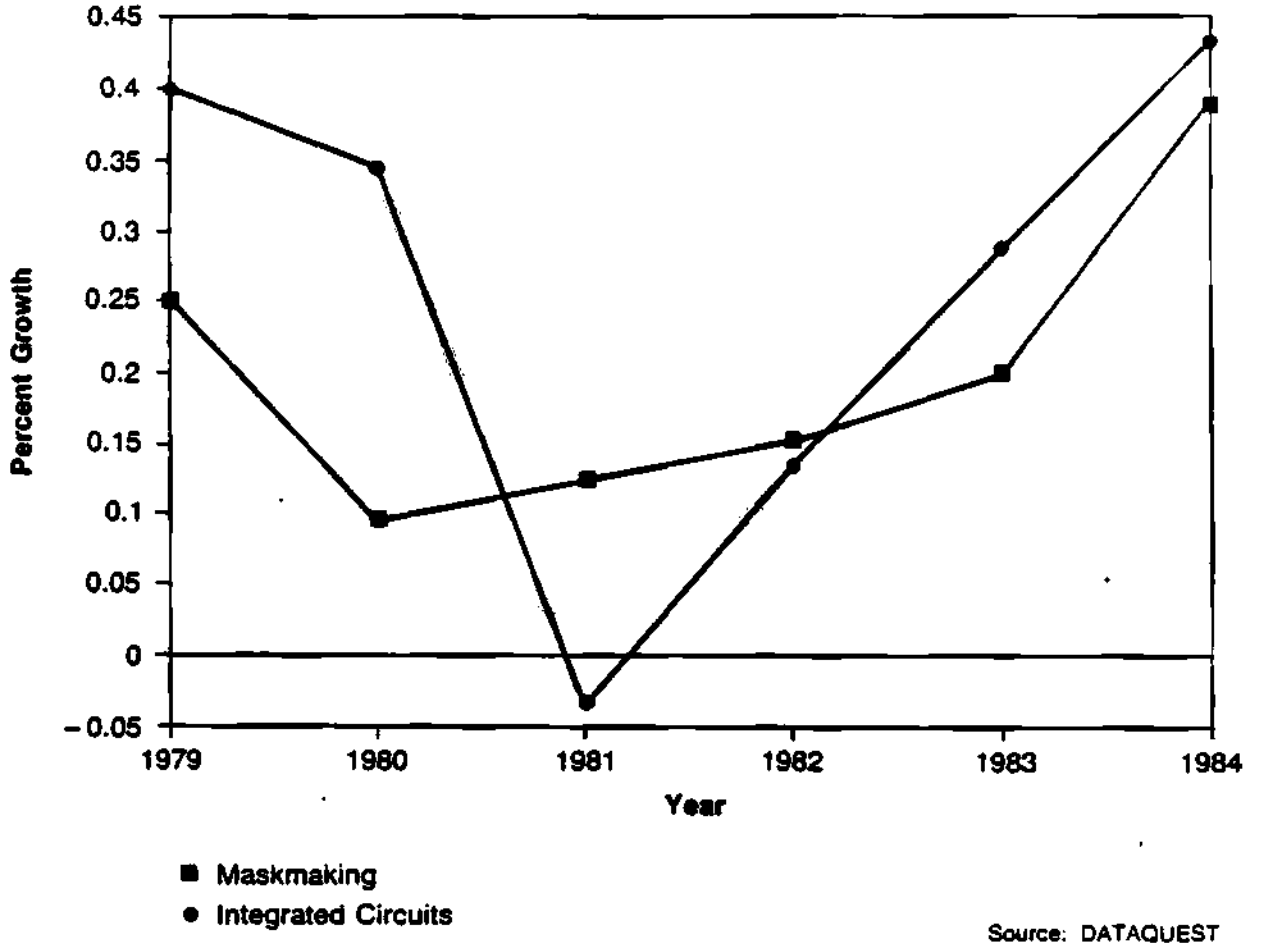
U.S. merchant mask competitors now total more than 17. Estimated shipments of these shops grew 17 percent from approximately $72 million in 1982 to $83 million in 1983. Sales grew 39 percent to almost $117 million in 1984. We expect sales to grow to $319 million in 1988, registering a CAGR from 1983 to 1984 of 30.6 percent.

Maskmaking Markets

Integrated circuit shipments grew 15 percent cumulatively over the same period. Figure 1 compares the year-to-year percent change in shipments for the U.S. semiconductor industry and for the U.S. merchant mask market. While maskmaking has grown at a cumulative rate similar to that of semiconductors, it maintained growth during the 1981/1982 industry downturn, and recovered in advance of semiconductors.

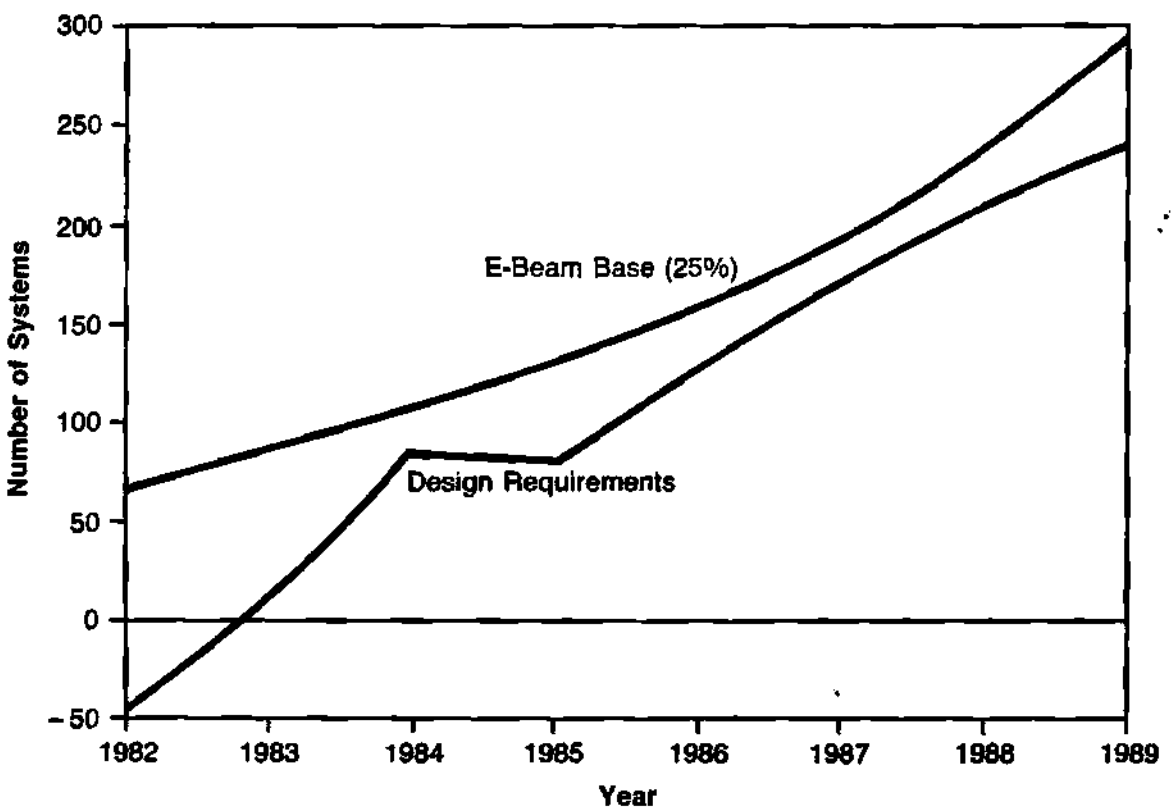
Figure 1

MASKMAKING AND IC REVENUE GROWTH



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1984

Required vs. Capability
Figure 2
E-Beam Installed Base



Maskmaking Markets

Maskmaking has traditionally led upturns in semiconductor sales growth, as semiconductor manufacturers usually concentrate on design generation during downturns. Approximately 77.5 percent of current merchant maskmaking revenues are from tooling of new mask layers. The reprint business was down at most shops, but has recovered rapidly along with booming semiconductor production in 1984. Several shops have reported that sales of emulsions and reprints are the most profitable portion of their businesses. However, because of the lackluster semiconductor markets in the first half of 1985, both new masks and reprint sales are severely impacted.

Historically, maskmaking has been reprint driven during semiconductor sales upturns and tooling driven during downturns. Although maskmaking demand for reprints is increasing due to volume production, there is an offsetting decrease in demand due to the increased use of pellicles and hard surface masks rather than emulsion plates. DATAQUEST believes that there had been a resurgence of tooling demand during the 1983-1984 upturn. This was driven partly by ASIC and quick-turn products and partly by the increased usage of steppers and projection aligners.

Start-Ups

Diamond Images is a start-up maskmaking company located in Los Gatos, California. The company has a Mebes system, which is currently in operation. Diamond began receiving revenue in September 1984. The company will not do optical jobs; it concentrates strictly on E-beam. Diamond's strategy is to target quick-turnaround customers in Silicon Valley, and it expects to be able to make long-term arrangements and/or commitments with its customers so that the customers will reserve capacity. This arrangement is expected to ease some of the capital burden to expand.

Micro Phase is a start-up maskmaking company located in Albuquerque, New Mexico. It plans to start with optical equipment and work its way up to E-beam equipment. The company began shipping products in July 1984. Initially, Micro Phase expects to get most of its business locally--that is, in and around Albuquerque. It expects to take two years to be fully facilitated with E-beam systems and inspection equipment capable of more high-technology masks.

Factors Affecting Business Growth

Several semiconductor industry trends are expected to increase maskmaking activity and revenues. The custom product market is more design intensive than the standard product market, and is projected to grow more rapidly than the industry as a whole. Further, pattern

generation time will increase for all leading-edge products as the line width decreases, circuit complexity grows, and the number of layers per circuit increases. Other factors positively impacting merchant maskmaking include:

- Rising demand for direct step-on-wafer (stepper) reticles is increasing use of E-beam equipment. E-beam equipment is also in demand to reduce turnaround time for the growing number of high-complexity devices.

- Maskmakers are seeing their sales growth driven by increases in tooling average sales prices (ASPs), as design complexity and die sizes increase. The die area of custom and semicustom products is estimated to be increasing 8 percent per year.

- The average number of new reticles per stepped tooling plate is three to five and increasing.

- More custom designs are being processed and more than 140 wafer foundries are in operation.

- Shared silicon (masks containing a number of different circuit designs) is increasing. Because shared silicon splits wafer processing and maskmaking costs among a number of designs and provides relatively low-cost prototype circuits for testing design viability, it is expected to encourage new design generation.

INSTALLED EQUIPMENT BASE AND ESTIMATED CAPACITY

In 1984, there were 109 E-beam systems and 442 optical pattern generators producing masks. There were 40 pattern generators and 10 E-beam systems in U.S. merchant mask shops.

DATAQUEST estimates that tooling the generation of reticles and master masks accounted for 77.5 percent of 1984 merchant maskmaking revenues. In 1984, optical pattern generation accounted for $45.4 million, or 50 percent, of tooling revenues, while E-beam accounted for $45.4 million, or 50 percent.

Maskmaking Markets

Optical Pattern Generators

There is speculation as to whether or not a shortfall in available merchant maskmaking capacity might occur. DATAQUEST estimates that the capacity of North American merchant mask shops is approximately 48,000 optically generated layers. Our estimate is based upon:

- An installed base of 40 optical PGs
- Three-shift operations with 90 percent machine utilization
- Machine throughput of 6,000 yielded flashes per hour
- Average flash count per layer of 27,000

For planning purposes, maskmakers use throughput estimates ranging from 10,000 to 18,000 flashes per hour. In actuality, the number of yielded flashes, which represent plates that are customer approved and shipped, may be much less. Further, the imaging time for chrome plates is greater than that for emulsion, and the trend is toward increased use of chrome plates. DATAQUEST, therefore, assumes a throughput of 6,000 flashes per hour for optical PGs.

Variations in machine throughput and capacity also arise from the device geometries, the registration requirements, and the inspection and repair times resulting from defect density specifications. The lengthy inspection times necessary for leading-edge device masks can place an additional bottleneck in shop throughput.

Merchant maskmakers' estimates of the average number of flashes per year per layer for circuits they are now tooling range from 13,000 to 50,000. Flash counts on critical layers of leading-edge devices are considerably higher; microprocessors may run from 60,000 to more than 1 million flashes per layer, gate arrays may run 45,000 to 70,000, 64K DRAMs may run more than 200,000 flashes per layer, and 256K DRAMs may run more than 900,000. Very few merchants actually attempt to average flash counts. Those who do note tremendous variations, yet find their average is less than 20,000 flashes per layer.

On the basis of an ASP of $850 per layer for optically generated masks, optical tooling revenues indicate shipments of 53,294 layers in 1984, 90 percent of theoretical capacity.

Electron-Beam PGs

Assuming an ASP of $2,000 per layer, the revenue attributed to merchant E-beam tooling indicates production of 22,700 layers during 1984. The estimate of the theoretical capacity of installed merchant E-beam equipment is based on:

- An installed base of 10 merchant E-beam systems in 1984
- The 1984 capacity per E-beam system of 3,200 layers per year, improving at 15 percent per year
- The flash count per layer not significantly influencing the layer capacity of E-beam equipment

At 3,200 layers per system per year in 1984, the theoretical capacity for merchant maskmakers is 32,000 layers, which indicates that the industry is using 71 percent of its E-beam capacity. This capacity figure does not take into account downtime or normal idleness because of scheduling. If current utilization is taken to be at optimum efficiency, then the industry is perilously close to maximum output.

Design Forecast

DATAQUEST has devised a model based on industry averages for E-beam and pattern generator utilization. The assumptions of the model are as follows:

- 2,400 layers per year for an E-beam system in 1982, growing at 15 percent per year
- 18,000 flashes per layer in 1982, growing at 25 percent per year
- 10 mask layers per device in 1982, growing at 5 percent per year
- 32 million flashes per year per pattern generator
- Semiconductor manufacturers begin using standard cell approaches to design standard products

In DATAQUEST's model, a computer algorithm was used to calculate the current designs per year based on our device sales forecast through 1988. These designs were converted into total flashes per year. The flashes that would be processed on the projected pattern generator installed base were subtracted from the total. The number of E-beam

systems that would be required to process the remaining flashes were then calculated. Table 3 shows the estimated installed base of E-beam systems that will be required to meet the device demand through 1988. This required installed base is compared to the installed base that will be available if shipments of E-beam systems grow at a 25 percent CAGR. Figure 2 displays these results graphically.

Table 3

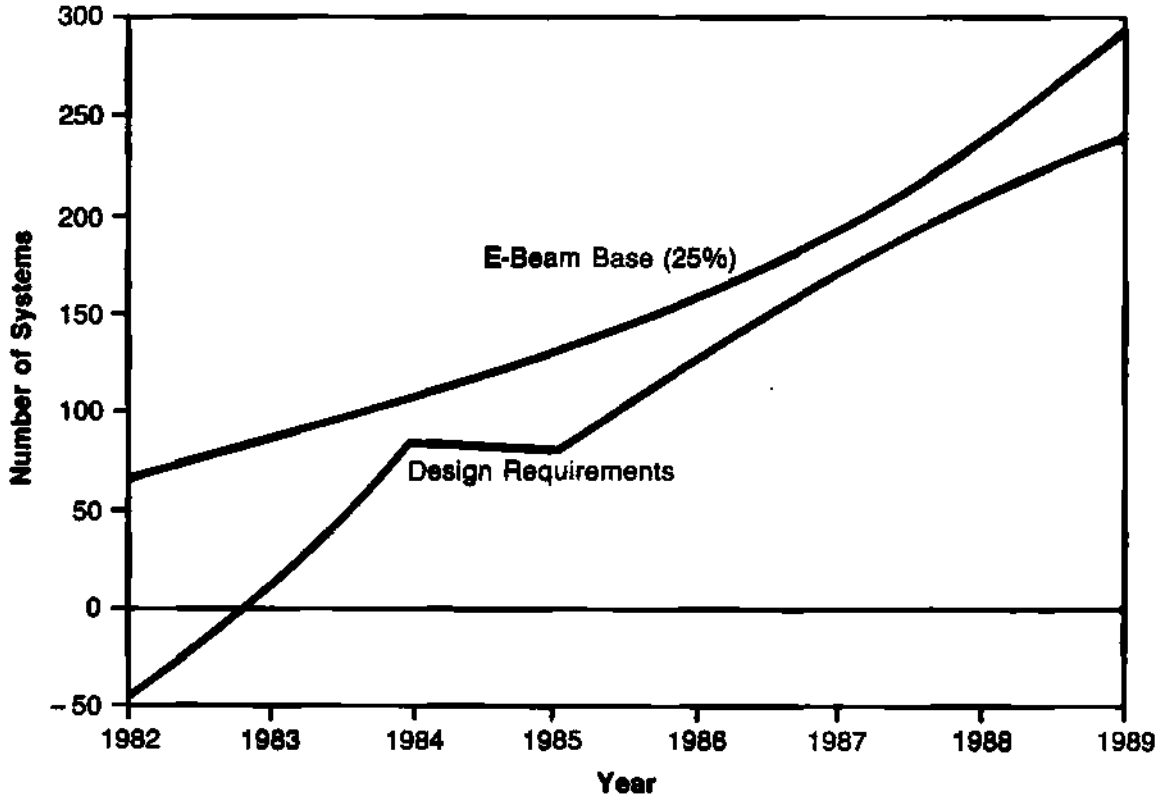
ESTIMATED REQUIRED E-BEAM INSTALLED BASE

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Required Installed Base	0	10	85	80	124	168	210
Actual Installed Base (25% Growth of Shipments after 1984)	66	85	109	130	158	191	236

Source: DATAQUEST

Figure 2

E-BEAM INSTALLED BASE
Required Versus Capability



Variation in E-beam Capacity

There is a certain amount of ambiguity to the concept of E-beam capacity. As in the case of optical PGs, the variations in estimates of writing time per layer on an E-beam vary widely, depending upon circuit complexity, design rules, registration requirements, and defect densities. A 1x master mask may take from 5 minutes to 5 hours, while a 10x reticle may take 15 minutes to 10 hours. While a reticle in

actuality may contain fewer line elements than a 1x master, the greater width of the lines makes it necessary for the beam to make multiple passes. In addition, because of the characteristics of the computerized pattern data sort, the repetitive circuit patterns on a 1x master may require less overall writing time.

Another factor in writing time is the size of the E-beam spot. A reticle written with a 1-micron spot may take 1.5 hours or less. If the same pattern were written with a 0.5-micron beam, the time could increase by a factor of 4.

Mask Costs as a Percent of Semiconductor Revenues

DATAQUEST estimates that the worldwide installed base of pattern generation equipment comprises 109 E-beam systems and 442 optical PGs. Utilization of all equipment to the same extent as that in the merchant shops would result in $510 million of E-beam tooling and $517 million of optical tooling. Tooling revenues of $1,027 million, representing 80 percent of maskmaking sales, indicates a worldwide maskmaking market of $1,283 million.

People in both in-house and merchant mask shops estimate that mask costs range from 3 to 7 percent of IC revenue. This percentage depends on the complexity of the product, its sales volume, and whether mask costs or mask selling prices are taken into account. In the 1984 integrated circuit market of $24,353 million (merchant plus captive), a $1,283 million market would represent 5.3 percent of IC revenue. This percentage of revenue reflects mask selling prices rather than production cost. Since both merchant and captive semiconductor manufacturers operate in-house mask shops, efficiency may vary depending upon product mix and volume.

A further factor that affects both mask costs as a percent of revenue and the practical capacity of mask shops is work flow. Mask demand tends to be highly cyclical. Although merchant mask shops may have advance notice of the maskmaking needs of a regular or volume customer, machines often are either idle, or a large number of jobs appear in a short period of time, forcing turnaround time out past the optimum of one week.

If equipment is added to improve turnaround time during these peak loads, shops must price their products to support those same machines while they are standing idle. For example, custom products have a tremendous premium for fast turnaround, and mask costs as a percent of revenue could be expected to be much higher for a custom manufacturer than for a broad-based standard product supplier. AMI's mask operation provides consistent 72-hour turnaround time in a highly design-intensive operation, and DATAQUEST estimates AMI's mask costs to be 7 percent of revenue.

OUTLOOK AND TRENDS

There has been much speculation about the effect that ASIC devices will have on mask demand. It was believed by some that these design-intensive products would greatly accelerate the usage of maskmaking equipment, pushing the industry toward a shortfall in supply. Our in-depth study indicates that this will not occur (Figure 2). However, as the semiconductor industry recovers from its current recession, the demand for maskmaking equipment will again start to approach the supply. This is particularly true if the recession causes delays in the shipments of E-beam equipment, reducing the supply curve as represented in Figure 2. We believe that the following trends will appear in 1987 and 1988.

Business Practices

As demand approaches supply, more efficient means of utilizing existing maskmaking equipment will be sought. These will include better scheduling and more production shifts. We will see merchant maskmakers requiring longer lead times from their customers so that scheduling can be optimized.

Semiconductor manufacturers will attempt to buy capacity at mask shops. This will begin an era of close alignment between customer and maskmaker as is practiced currently in Japan.

There will be incentives for E-beam suppliers with lower market share to intensify development and production growth.

Maskmaking Markets

New Technology

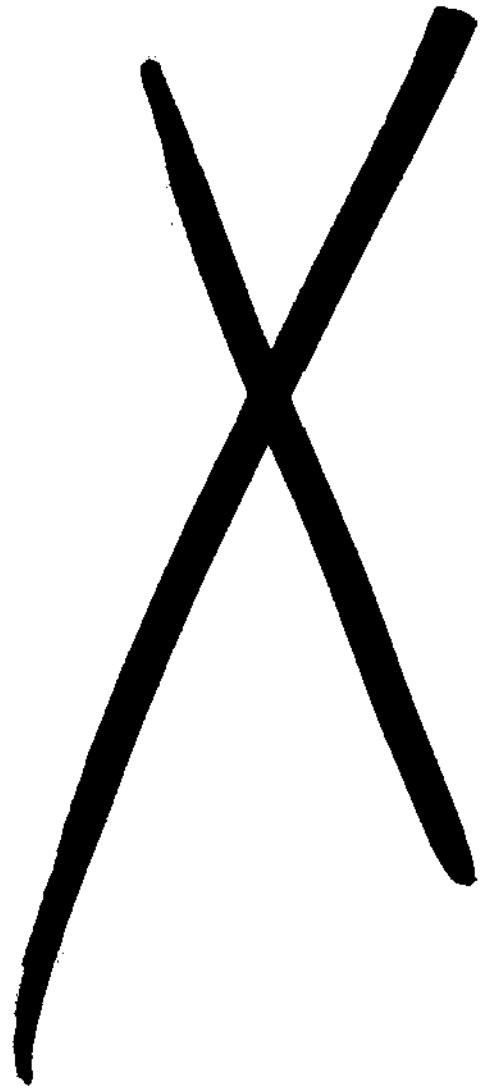
We expect the demand for maskmaking capacity to accelerate the development of faster pattern-generating tools such as laser pattern generators. In addition, sales of existing pattern generators are likely to remain strong.

In order to extend the life of reticles and models, we expect the use of pellicles to accelerate.

Sales of direct-write E-beam systems will become a factor. These systems will be used in manufacturing ASIC devices that are positioned for quick turnaround, since direct-write can reduce mask time by four days. The use of these systems by semiconductor manufacturers could have a considerable impact on merchant maskmakers that feature quick-turn masks as a business strategy. In addition, these systems will bring more efficiency to E-beam processing, since several devices can be mixed on the same wafer.

Competition

The three top merchant maskmakers in Japan (Hoya, Dai Nippon, and Toppan) have 50 percent more installed E-beam systems than U.S. companies. We expect their installed base to double by the end of 1985. This will mean considerable erosion of market share of U.S companies as Japanese companies set up U.S. sales offices, some of which may have satellite data transmission capabilities.



Computer Management of Wafer Fabrication Process

OVERVIEW

DATAQUEST believes that one of the most significant and persistent trends in semiconductor manufacturing is the increasing use of computers to assist in managing and controlling the wafer fabrication process, especially for VLSI processes. Because manufacturers of low-cost semiconductors will have a significant competitive advantage, we believe that the future leaders in the semiconductor industry will be those companies that are most skilled in the use of CAM (computer-aided manufacturing) systems.

Specifically, we envision the use of computers in one or more of the following eight functional areas:

- Data collection and analysis
- Wafer start scheduling
- Resource allocation
- Planning and cost accounting
- Inventory control
- Line balance
- Process control
- Equipment and facilities monitoring and maintenance

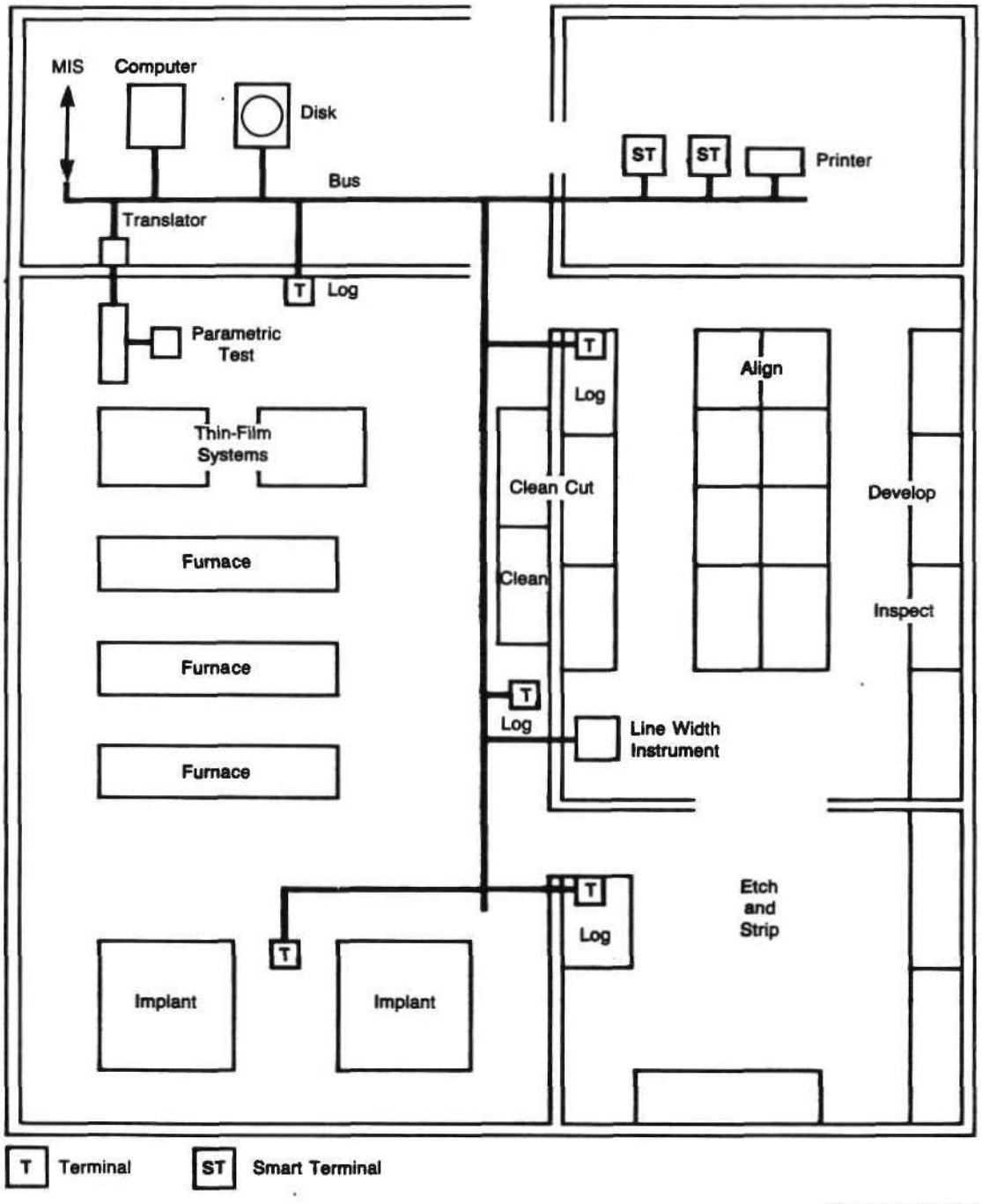
Such services are paramount to a fully-functioning automated semiconductor manufacturing plant and will be implemented far in advance of automation of wafer or device transport. The evolution of automation in semiconductor manufacturing will occur in the following order:

- Computer management of the manufacturing process
- Interfacing of the computer to the process equipment
- Arrangement of process equipment into "islands of automation"
- Automated wafer transport between islands of automation

We believe that a computer system can be easily justified. A complete hardware and software system may typically cost $500,000, yet such a system could significantly increase the productivity of a $20 million wafer fabrication area. In this example, a productivity increase of only 2-1/2 percent would justify the system. Reliable,

Figure 1

CAM SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE



Source: DATAQUEST

accessible, and analyzable data on lot location, equipment performance, facilities performance, and engineering parameters can be used to detect line balance or yield problems before they become catastrophic, thus improving the output of good products.

This "early warning" capability is particularly important in the VLSI era because process tolerance is difficult to meet and more likely to go out of adjustment, and because wafers are more subject to contamination while awaiting processing. In addition, high equipment costs often mean that backup equipment is less likely to be available. By using "early warning" and by reducing WIP (work in process), electrical yields can be raised significantly.

Semiconductor manufacturers are now pushing for assistance in planning, scheduling, and meeting customer commit dates and quantities. In the future, additional capabilities will be added to CAM systems to support full automation of the fab. Full automation in semiconductor manufacturing will be done in assembly first, in test second, and then in fabrication.

DATAQUEST estimates that merchant CAM suppliers' sales will grow 233 percent from 1983 to 1984, from $12 million to $40 million. This growth will result from the many semiconductor manufacturers, who had already invested considerable sums in their own development, replacing their systems or augmenting them with commercial systems. Also, there is a growing recognition that CAM support is an integral part of the manufacturing facility. We expect this practice to continue as CAM system vendors improve their products and prove the performance of their systems. DATAQUEST estimates that the CAM system market will grow at a 41 percent compound annual growth rate (CAGR) from 1984 to 1988, to reach $160 million.

HISTORY

The growth of the CAM vendors came from two directions. First, custom software programs were supplied by third-party houses to semiconductor companies. The development of these custom programs gradually evolved into sets of standard programs and computer hardware that were customized for a particular type of process and facility. The second growth area was from equipment suppliers that had expanded the computer control of several pieces of equipment to allow control and monitoring of those pieces from one location. This computer control arose from the users' need for lot tracking ability within these equipment groups, which gave rise to a minitracking and process control system that could be purchased from the equipment supplier as a separate item.

Standard CAM packages have only been available for semiconductor manufacturing since 1980. A general lack of knowledge about CAM systems persists within the user community. A common statement from a user is "I didn't know the system would do X, and I don't understand why it won't do Y." These statements indicate an inability to judge the systems and to generate a complete purchase specification. Many times CAM systems are purchased without a good plan on how to implement and use them. A major key to increased usage and sales of CAM systems is the education of the potential user.

CAM SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Figure 1 is a diagram of the type of commercially available CAM system that is being installed in fab areas in 1984. It is made up of a 32-bit minicomputer (the local host plus terminals), interfaces to process equipment, facilities monitors, a printer for reports, and an interface to the company MIS system. Terminals are used as the predominant I/O method to communicate with fab personnel. Lot movement, operator instructions, and instrument readings all transfer over the terminal-host link. Terminals are placed at the beginning of the masking process (yellow room), at the end of etch and strip, at implant, and in the diffusion and thin-film areas. The computer controls the product, process, and equipment history files stored in disks, and computes updated yields as lot transactions occur. The computer also uploads information to the company MIS systems for compilation of financial results. In many cases, the computer comprises two CPUs (central processing units) in parallel, where one satisfies routine tracking requirements and the second is a backup that can be used for engineering analysis or report generation without loading down the primary computer. Two disk storage systems may be used to ensure that the data base is secure.

It is important to note that lots are logged only at major steps. With typical throughput times, logging occurs only once or twice a day. There are very few interfaces between the process equipment and the host computer--the operators are still the eyes and ears of process monitoring. There is no automatic system for transport of cassettes between process equipment; operators are the transport system. In the figure, the computer is shown as part of a fab operation; however, in most applications, the computer also performs lot tracking and operator instruction at wafer sort (die probe), assembly, and final test.

Since large numbers of terminals feed the computer, it is common for the system to become transaction-limited. In this case, the response time to clear lots or receive instructions rapidly extends to several minutes. The solution to this problem will be discussed later.

Table 1 gives an equipment list for a system for a small fab (1,000 to 2,000 starts per week). In addition to the items shown in this list, language and application programs are needed to make the system operational.

Table 1

CAM EQUIPMENT FOR A SMALL FAB

Hardware	Function
0.5- to 1-MIPS CPU	Computation and management
4-Mbyte RAM	Local storage of data and program
1-Gigabyte Disk	Program mass data storage
Bus	Connection of peripherals
Tape Drive	Backup for disk
2 Smart Terminals	Run analysis or planning programs
5 to 10 Terminals	I/O fab operations

Source: DATAQUEST

CAM SYSTEM SERVICES

The CAM systems for semiconductor fabs, which are being supplied in 1984 both internally and by vendors, provide the following services:

- Centralization of data--The system clusters data about the operation in one manageable location and keeps it updated on a real-time basis. It can replace log charts, run cards, and specification books, and can insert many items in a file that otherwise are carried in various peoples' heads.

- WIP (work in process)--This system can track WIP and compute yields through operations. Reports on these functions can be given in several formats:
  - Lots at a process step
  - Lot time at an operation
  - Product inventories through all steps
  - Yield at a specific step or at all steps
  - Activity by step
- MIS (management information systems)--This system can upload production results to MIS where financial results can be computed, such as:
  - Earning of production
  - Dollar value of material added or removed from inventory
  - Variance to earnings
- Yield Analysis--This system can make lot histories available in a form where simple scanning by an engineer may lead to a solution, and can make use of statistical analysis programs that clarify the sources of problems. These programs include the ability to:
  - Plot parameters
  - Run regressions
  - Call up all lots with similar parameters or results
  - Display results in a variety of graphic formats
  - Call up results from lots that went through a single piece of equipment in a given period
- Documentation and Specification Control--Information is controlled by the computer and fed to the location where the procedure is to be followed. For example, after a lot is logged into an operation, the computer looks up the product code associated with the lot number, then looks up the proper operator procedure and process program associated with that

product. It then displays the information at the local terminal. If there is a computer interface to the process equipment, the proper program is downloaded to the equipment. Such an interface requires that the equipment have SECS (semiconductor equipment communication standard) protocol implemented in the operating systems.

- Lot Scheduling--Given a quantity of several lots prior to operation, the CAM system tells the operator the lot processing order to meet a fab-out schedule. CAM systems also provide scheduling by operation and period to meet overall wafer-out schedules.

- Maintenance--Equipment service schedules, spare parts control, uptime, and failure mechanisms can be tracked by the CAM system.

- Equipment Monitoring--The performance and quality of operation can be tracked by the CAM system. If there is an interface to the equipment, this procedure can be done automatically. Otherwise, the data must be transferred by operators to the computer system.

CAM SYSTEM TYPES

CAM systems for semiconductor fabrication come with a wide spectrum of services. Thus, the cost of a system varies from several thousand dollars to a million dollars.

The following discussion describes the different types of CAM systems from the simplest to the most sophisticated.

Desktop CAM

The simplest CAM systems use desktop computers and modified spreadsheets for computing wafer-start schedules and line-balancing schedules. The initial tracking systems offered by vendors did not include these programs, so semiconductor manufacturers developed their own or hired consultants to generate the programs. Line balancing information is computed by loading the WIP information from the tracking system. The computer generates a work schedule segregated by operation to rebalance the WIP. Wafer-start schedules are generated by putting in the demand and then computing backward to the wafer starts needed. The computer then adjusts the throughput so as not to exceed the fab capacity. Programs at this level can be purchased for several thousands of dollars.

First-Level Management CAM

The first-level tracking and technical data management system runs on a 16-bit computer with hard disks, printer, and several terminals, and may have an interface to measurement instruments. These systems are intended for use in small or development fabs. They supply the same tracking ability as larger systems, but rapidly run out of capacity where many transactions are needed. This type of system can serve as a local tracking system within a larger CAM system. An example of this is a system for tracking and correlation measurements within a yellow room and etch facility that uploads data to the larger system. Tracking systems such as this sell for from $60,000 to $80,000.

Full CAM

Full CAM systems that supply multiple services use high-speed 16- and 32-bit processors. These systems start at $200,000 for a single CPU system, with terminals and programs for lot tracking, engineering analysis, and report generation. They satisfy the needs of smaller fabs or start-up companies where the CAM system is not tightly coupled to the fab operation. In these cases, equipment operation does not depend upon the CAM, and WIP surveys can be handled by first-line managers.

Large Fabs

Large fabs (from 5,000 to 10,000 wafer starts per week) in which the CAM system is needed to manage the operation, use high-speed dual or multiple processor systems. They are tied to a bus where the loss of a processor may cause a slowdown in access time and a temporary elimination of some engineering analysis and report generation, but will not cause a work stoppage. These systems range in cost from $700,000 to $1.5 million for combined software and hardware.

Vendors

The vendors of these systems are shown in Table 2. BTU/Bruce, Consilium, and IP Sharp are third-party software houses supplying application programs that run on other hardware. These companies install their software after the computer is installed and made operational. Frequently, they participate in the selection and layout of the CAM hardware. CTX and Hewlett-Packard vend both hardware and applications software. Nanometrics sells a limited program for use in small fabs. Enhansys and BBN Research offer data analysis programs that can be purchased within the CAM software or as separate programs. As separate programs, the system cost ranges from $30,000 to $120,000.

Also shown in Table 2 is a list of semiconductor manufacturers and their choice of hardware on which to internally design CAM programs. These systems were developed prior to commercial programs being available on the market.

Table 2

CAM SYSTEMS

Vendor	Product Name	Hardware Base
Large Systems		
BTU/Bruce	Fasttrack	Digital VAX Series Plus Briton Lee
Consilium	Comets	Digital VAX Series
CTX	CTX 4000	CTX computer based on multiple 68000 microprocessors
Fairchild	Incyte	Digital VAX Series
Hewlett-Packard	IC 10 PC 10 CA 10	HP 300 plus multiple 1000's
IP Sharp	Promis	Digital VAX Series
Limited Systems		
Nanometrics	Nononet	Codata based on 68000 microprocessor
Engineering Analysis Systems		
Enhansys	Enhansys System	Runs on several hardware systems
BBN Research	RS/1	Digital PDP11 or VAX
Internal Systems		
AMD		IBM
Fairchild		Digital
IBM		IBM
Motorola		Tandem
National		IBM
Texas Instruments		IBM

Source: DATAQUEST

CAM OPERATION STATUS

As of the beginning of 1984, merchant system suppliers have installed approximately 100 CAM systems in U.S. and European semiconductor manufacturing facilities. These installations are a mixture of systems that cover only fabs and ones that cover an entire manufacturing cycle. In addition to these systems, many of the larger merchant and captive manufacturers have developed and now use their own systems. The major applications for those systems already installed are WIP tracking, production reporting, feeding information to MIS systems, and data gathering.

Yield Improvement

Current developments in CAD systems will facilitate electrical yield improvement. These systems are used in yield analysis to correlate data coming from all of the manufacturing and test areas. By analyzing these data, process parameters can be changed to optimize yields. These analysis programs can be purchased independently from the tracking systems and can run on separate computers.

Production Scheduling

More efficient scheduling of material and time will help meet customer orders. With the recent rapid expansion of demand for semiconductors, lead times have stretched to months, and customer in-house inventories have been reduced to a level where meeting delivery dates of semiconductors is very important. A common situation in IC manufacturing is a fab with 100 products and 30 different product flows. Without computer scheduling of the fab floor and computer tracking of cumulative yield, it would be impossible to meet schedules or even know when a schedule was going to be missed. In the opinion of CAM system users, previous systems do not do an adequate job of scheduling this kind of situation. The schedule is even more difficult to control in assembly and test because of multiple package types and multiple electrical grades for each product.

Another use of the CAM system which is starting to be requested, is that of fab floor scheduling to maximize output. This type of capability is being requested for high-volume fabs running only a few products of one or two process flows. The emphasis in the CAM system changes from tracking WIP, to tracking and scheduling resources (equipment, labor, and indirect material). The mix can easily be controlled because it is not complicated by many products. With the mix under control, schedule objectives and customer needs can be met by increasing throughput.

Learning Curve Improvements

CAM systems are also rapidly debugging new fabs and products, thus improving yields. If the CAM system is in place prior to a new fab being exercised, it brings all the data on its operation together. Therefore, when wafers are run, analysis can quickly be accomplished and corrective action taken. New products often need "tweeking" to improve yields or correct performance. With a complete manufacturing history available via the CAM system, decisions can quickly be made as to whether the problem is in the design or in the manufacturing process.

CAM Operating Limitations

Although significant gains can be made by implementing a CAM system, there are still problems to be overcome. The real-time control of both the process and data input are areas that are lagging in development.

Equipment Interfaces

Tracking process equipment performance and availability is very difficult if the equipment has not been interfaced to the CAM system; that is, if there is no communication link between the CAM computer and the microcomputer in the process equipment that controls and monitors it. The SECS protocol, established by SEMI in 1980, has allowed the implementation of this interface to proceed. However, so far only a few pieces of process equipment have developed such interfaces.

To operate within this limitation, some fab managers have improvised by using techniques such as "foot-net" or "sneaker-net." Using this technique, diskettes from processing equipment microcomputers, which contain records of process and equipment performance, are carried by an operator to the host and are placed in the CAM system disk controller. The information is then transferred under computer control to the CAM system hard disk. Obviously, this is not real-time tracking. Interfacing the equipment to the CAM system is the next step fab managers need to make in order to improve control of the operation. Both tracking of WIP and manufacturing equipment is needed for full automation.

Terminal I/O

The terminal is the standard communication link from the fab floor to the CAM computer. This communication method has its limitations. A typical IC fab sequence can have:

- 60 analytical measurement points
- 80 cleaning or stripping points

- 150 process steps
- 200 transfer steps

Today, only about 20 to 30 of these points, or 5 percent, are logged into the terminal. The average logging and measurement results require 30 keystrokes per entry. The total keystrokes to log 30 points for a 2,500-wafer-start-per-week fab is 100,000 keystrokes per week. For a fab operator, a reasonable keying rate is 30 strokes per minute, or 3,300 minutes per week of logging time. This amounts to about 55 hours per week, or 1.5 operators. If all lot transfers and logging through process equipment were done on terminals, then 30 operators would be required. This is not reasonable, since this typical fab requires about 70 operators to process the wafers. To eliminate the need for additional operators, bar code readers, smart cards, or voice-actuated terminals must be added to complete the communication interface to the CAM system. This will be an interim solution for terminal I/O until the equipment can be interfaced to the computer through the SECS protocol.

CAM Future

CAM will eventually allow the full automation of semiconductor manufacturing. As discussed previously, there are significant hurdles to overcome. The following paragraphs discuss the evolution of manufacturing into full automation through the use of CAM systems.

Soft Automation

Semiconductor manufacturers are approaching the automation of fab operations very cautiously. It is premature for merchant suppliers to implement hard automation (i.e., automated WIP transport) in order to remain competitive. The greater risk appears to be trying to automate before equipment designed for automation is available and debugged. As an interim step, semiconductor manufacturers are attempting to do complete "soft automation"; that is, real-time control and monitoring of equipment and WIP. (Real-time control is the control and monitoring of the equipment through a data link from the host computer.)

To accomplish this, the SECS protocol must be implemented on all process equipment and measurement instruments (i.e., V/I, film thickness, and line width). To do real-time logging of WIP without having excessive people in the fab, bar code readers must be added to equipment, and bar code labels must be attached to cassettes or cassette boxes. Terminals will still be needed (probably as part of the process equipment) to instruct the operators as to the schedule, lot processing sequence, and procedures. Real-time tracking allows much better control of schedules.

Lots can be scheduled out of a fab on a specific day rather than within a specified week, as is now the case.

Fab floor scheduling will be done by programs that optimize a particular result of the process sequence, such as:

- Maximizing wafer output of the fab
- Optimizing product mix schedules
- Meeting an out-schedule, but maintaining no greater than a certain amount of WIP
- Minimizing the effect of non-operative equipment by rescheduling other equipment workloads

These results require that the CAM programs have the ability to monitor equipment availability and WIP status from both after and before a particular process step. Decisions at a particular location can then be made, based on information about the whole process line.

Operators will play an increasingly passive role in the fab operation. Instead of telling the CAM system what material is at their work center, the CAM system will tell the operators to work on the material in a certain order. The operators will be told when a process sequence must be finished in order to maintain the schedule. The CAM system may also tell them to wait for lots that are expected to be there at a specified time.

Hard Automation

In order to implement hard automation, semiconductor manufacturers will need the following components:

- A working system for real-time tracking and control
- Highly reliable equipment
- Automatic monitoring of equipment and process status by process equipment
- Automatic transport of WIP
- Staff of computer engineers

By having a working tracking and control system, the smooth implementation of mechanical automation can occur; the communications link takes the place of manual entry at the workstations. This necessitates the existence of SECS protocol on the process equipment.

Part of a fully automatic system will require rescheduling and re-routing algorithms. These will resolve problems with routing when a piece of equipment malfunctions. Such equipment malfunctions must be kept to a minimum in order not to waste the capacity of other equipment. This will necessitate extensive preventive maintenance and equipment redundancy.

Equipment must have microprocessor control and monitoring of process and equipment status. There must be the capability for uploading and downloading data via the communications link.

The hard automation will include transport systems, robots, and buffer storage for cassettes. Two types of cassette transport systems are evolving--a "mail cart" type and a "track" type.

In the "mail cart" system, the cart, with several cassettes, moves between process equipment, guided by tape on the floor. The cassettes are carried in very clean, sealed chambers to achieve minimal particulate contamination on the wafers. This system is relatively flexible since process equipment location changes require only a re-routing of guiding tape on the floor to guide the cart to the new location. Veeco has developed a cart product, called the Veebot, and will market it in 1984.

In the "track" system, cassettes are transported in enclosed tunnels from one station to another. Such tunnels must be very clean to ensure minimal particulate contamination to the wafers during transport. This system is less flexible than the cart method, since changes in routing may necessitate mechanical changes to the track. However, the track system will run on simpler software programs than the cart system. Varian has introduced such a product, the Autotrack, and will ship the product in the last half of 1984.

Table 3 lists the automatic transport products that have been introduced. Some of the companies are still in the prototype stage of development. DATAQUEST estimates that it will take two years before a fab is built that can fully utilize auto-cassette transport systems.

Cassette buffering and robotized transfer will be required for either the cart or track approach. Cassette buffers must be used to increase equipment utilization by allowing temporary variation of local

throughputs. These occur during normal operation but are most severe when equipment malfunctions occur. Cassette buffers are also needed to store WIP during fab shutdown periods. These buffers will be located both locally, for material being processed, and centrally, to store cassettes waiting scheduling. Some form of robot will be required to transfer the cassettes from the transport system to the equipment.

Table 3

AUTOMATIC TRANSPORT SYSTEMS

Company	Product
Flexible Manufacturing Systems (FMS)	Computer-Integrated Manufacturing (CIM) System--cart type system
NACOM	NAMTRACK--serial cassette transport
Varian	Autotrack--serial cassette transport
Veeco Integrated Automation	Veebot--series of carts and cassette buffers

Source: DATAQUEST

The popular conception of hard automation is the arrangement of equipment into "islands of automation," where pieces of equipment with complementary functions are grouped together. An example of this is integrating the lithography, photoresist, etch, and inspection processes into an in-line system. For small fabs, where equipment (or island) redundancy is not possible, the reliability of the equipment is of paramount importance in order to maintain the work flow. Even for larger fabs with equipment redundancy, the malfunction of one piece of equipment in an island will reduce the throughput of the fab. In these cases, MTTR (mean time to repair) and MTBF (mean time between failure) become important parameters for the balancing of line throughputs.

Semiconductor manufacturers must be prepared to shift direct labor from an operator-oriented approach to an automated approach. This will require a significant investment in computer engineers. Even for a soft automation system, it is estimated that two years are required to receive maximum benefits from the system. Such benefits require personnel who know and understand the system. This underscores the fact that automated systems do not decrease direct labor costs, but simply transfer resource expenditures to more technically advanced areas.

CAM Research

Semiconductor companies are investing some of their research money in advanced manufacturing systems through the Semiconductor Research Cooperative. Thirty-two semiconductor manufacturers (merchant and captive) support this cooperative, which lets research contracts to universities for studies in semiconductor technologies. One-third of the research budget goes to the study of semiconductor manufacturing systems. These studies have two benefits:

- The supporting companies receive reports on the studies and can take part in the implementation of the new technologies.
- Universities are encouraged by the dissemination of money to do research in this field and to offer courses on manufacturing systems.

CAM IN JAPANESE FABRICATION

The character of Japanese semiconductor manufacturers has caused the CAM systems to be developed in a different way than in the United States. These influences are:

- Semiconductor manufacturing has developed within larger electronic and computer companies.
- The Japanese strive to keep WIP at low levels (just-in-time scheduling).
- Operators are not acquainted with keyboards.
- Non-employees are kept out of the fabs.
- The Japanese semiconductor industry has grown very fast.

- There is little opportunity for small start-ups to service large companies.

- Japanese manufacturers use a large portion of U.S.-made equipment.

The result of these influences is that CAM systems have largely been developed in-house. Some of the more obvious characteristics of these systems are the use of bar code readers in place of terminals for logging material transfers, and the use of more complete communication links between processing equipment and computers. A U.S. company that is similar to the vertically integrated Japanese companies is Hewlett-Packard (HP). HP has also developed its own in-house WIP tracking system and early communication interfaces to process equipment. The HP Research Laboratory in Palo Alto was the main influence behind the establishment of the SEMI SECS interface.

DATAQUEST sees no indication that Japanese semiconductor companies are significantly ahead of U.S. companies in the use of hard automation (automatic transport of WIP) in fabrication. The higher electrical yields of the Japanese companies are probably due to better analysis of problems, better discipline of operators, increased drive for quality, and shorter throughput times.

CAM MARKET DATA

DATAQUEST estimates that total 1984 sales for CAM hardware and software systems for semiconductor fabrication in the United States and Europe will reach $40 million. We expect the size of this market to expand more rapidly than the overall rate of increase for semiconductor equipment sales. Many fab areas that are currently operating without adequate CAM support will purchase systems to install in their operating fabs. In addition, plant expansions and start-ups will implement CAM systems on an increasing percentage basis. As more users become educated on the use of CAM capabilities, the requirement for computing power and additional services will grow. Table 4 represents our estimate of U.S. and European sales of CAM systems.

Table 5 gives the sales history of companies supplying CAM systems for semiconductor manufacturing. All sales dollars are for combined hardware and software. Bruce, Consilium, and IP Sharp are third-party software houses and do not vend the hardware. To equalize these companies for actual semiconductor-related revenue, 50 percent of sales need to be subtracted. In 1984 sales are expected to increase 233 percent over 1983 due to the number of new fabs being constructed and the recognition by the user market that CAM systems are needed to run a fab of any significant size.

Table 4

ESTIMATED U.S. AND EUROPEAN SALES OF CAM SYSTEMS
(Millions of Dollars)

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	CAGR (1984-1988)
Sales	$13.0	$49.0	$60.0	$82.0	$115.0	$165.0	36.9%

Table 5

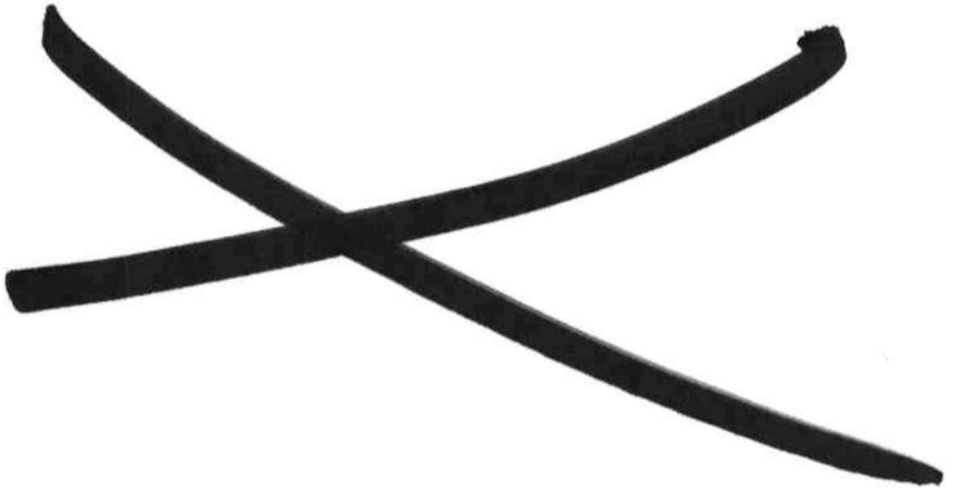
CAM SYSTEMS SALES
(Millions of Dollars)

Company	1981	1982	1983	1984
Bruce			$ 1.0	$ 2.0
Consilium		$2.0	4.0	18.0
CTX		0.5	1.0	4.0
Hewlett-Packard	$4.0	4.0	5.0	15.0
I.P. Sharp	___	2.0	2.0	10.0
Total	$4.0	$8.5	$13.0	$49.0

Source: DATAQUEST

Two companies not shown on Table 5 are Enhansys and BB&N, which specialize in analysis programs. These can be purchased as part of the system offered by the system suppliers shown on Table 5, or can be bought separately and run on off-the-shelf computers.

As the semiconductor industry shifts toward a commodity business, the main difference in semiconductor vendors will be the service that they provide to the customer. The semiconductor companies will all have the same resource availability and will have to deliver products at market-driven prices. DATAQUEST believes that a company's competitive advantage will come from efficient use of its manufacturing system. The CAM system is the glue that holds the system together and allows the user to direct and control the system's operation. The future leaders in the semiconductor industry will be those companies that are most skilled in the use of CAM systems.



Packaging

INTRODUCTION

This section discusses semiconductor packaging trends. The material covered in this section reviews the following:

- North American unit consumption data
- Packaging trends
- Packaging technology
- Packaging data

Various segments of this section are organized as follows:

- Bullet format for quick reading
- Tables and graphs designed for presentation format

Overview

Significant achievements in VLSI fabrication and design technologies have reached the point where concurrent improvements in packaging and die-level interconnection technologies are necessary for continued system performance. Of all the packaging and interconnection technology issues discussed, one issue readily agreed upon is that all users are going through a demanding transitional phase of component packaging decisions--decisions that will have to be dealt with in the near future, as the industry approaches submicron geometries.

The primary forces in the electronics industry driving the trends in component packaging are:

- Improved functional density (submicron geometries)
- Lower system/package cost
- Higher system performance

DATAQUEST believes that surface-mount devices (SMDs) will eventually offer the most cost-effective and viable of solutions to address the VLSI packaging dilemma in the consumer, commercial, industrial and military, and telecommunications end-user markets.

Packaging

DATAQUEST expects that SMDs will continue to grow and emerge from today's insignificant small base to a major position in future years. While the traditional through-hole dual-in-line packages (DIPs) will continue to grow in market share through the 1980s, we estimate that by the end of this decade, approximately 50 percent of all worldwide components, both passive and active, will be surface mount (either plastic or ceramic).

The package consumption estimates in Table 1 are based on DATAQUEST estimates of North American integrated circuit (IC) consumption. The figures reflect our estimates by major package format with allowances for yield losses.

Table 2 presents package use as a percent of total package consumption.

Table 3 shows the yearly growth rates by package type as a percent of total package consumption.

Table 1

ESTIMATED NORTH AMERICAN SHIPMENTS BY PACKAGE TYPE
(Millions of Units)

Package	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990	CAGR(84-90)
Plastic DIP	5,898	7,875	11,548	8,042	7,936	9,510	10,304	8,666	7,403	-7.1%
CERDIP	920	1,144	1,562	1,013	930	1,038	1,047	820	652	-13.5%
Ceramic DIP	66	80	107	68	62	68	67	51	40	-15.1%
Flatpack	35	37	42	23	18	17	14	9	6	-27.2%
Ceramic Chip Carrier	13	29	69	79	127	250	443	611	855	52.1%
Plastic Chip Carrier/Quad	7	19	57	82	164	402	891	1,531	2,672	89.7%
SO	4	13	40	60	127	329	767	1,390	2,560	100.1%
PGA	2	4	9	11	17	33	59	81	114	52.1%
Header	53	64	84	53	47	52	51	38	30	-15.9%
Other	219	346	598	492	574	812	1,039	1,032	1,041	9.7%
Total	7,217	9,610	14,118	9,922	10,003	12,510	14,683	14,231	15,372	1.4%

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Table 2

ESTIMATED NORTH AMERICAN SHIPMENTS BY PACKAGE TYPE
(Percent)

Package	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990
Plastic DIP	81.7%	82.0%	81.8%	81.1%	79.3%	76.0%	70.2%	60.9%	48.2%
CERDIP	12.8	11.9	11.1	10.2	9.3	8.3	7.1	5.8	4.2
Ceramic DIP	0.9	0.8	0.8	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.5	0.4	0.3
Flatpack	0.5	0.4	0.3	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.1	0.1	.0
Ceramic Chip Carrier	0.2	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.3	2.0	3.0	4.3	5.6
Plastic Chip Carrier/Quad	0.1	0.2	0.4	0.8	1.6	3.2	6.1	10.8	17.4
SO	0.1	0.1	0.3	0.6	1.3	2.6	5.2	9.8	16.7
PGA	.0	.0	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.6	0.7
Header	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.5	0.4	0.3	0.3	0.2
Other	3.0	3.6	4.2	5.0	5.7	6.5	7.1	7.3	6.8
Total	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Table 3

ESTIMATED NORTH AMERICAN YEARLY GROWTH RATES BY PACKAGE TYPE
(Percent)

Package	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990
Plastic DIP	33.5%	46.6%	-30.4%	-1.3%	19.8%	8.4%	-15.9%	-14.6%
CERDIP	24.3	36.5	-35.2	-8.1	11.6	0.9	-21.7	-20.5
Ceramic DIP	22.0	34.0	-36.4	-9.8	9.5	-1.0	-23.1	-21.9
Flatpack	4.7	15.0	-45.4	-22.6	-6.0	-15.0	-34.0	-33.0
Ceramic Chip Carrier	118.7	140.2	14.1	61.6	96.3	77.5	37.8	39.9
Plastic Chip Carrier/Quad	172.8	199.6	42.3	101.6	144.8	121.4	71.8	74.5
SO	187.8	216.0	50.1	112.7	158.3	133.5	81.3	84.1
PGA	118.7	140.2	14.1	61.6	96.3	77.5	37.8	39.9
Header	20.9	32.7	-37.0	-10.7	8.5	-1.9	-23.9	-22.7
Other	57.7	73.2	-17.8	16.5	41.5	28.0	-0.7	0.9
Total	33.1%	46.9%	-29.7%	0.8%	25.1%	17.4%	-3.1%	8.0%

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Packaging

PACKAGING TRENDS

DATAQUEST expects the following packaging trends:

- By 1990, 50 percent of ICs used by OEMs will be surface mount.
- Beyond 1990, tape automated bonding (TAB) will be the more viable interconnection and packaging technology.
- Dual-in-line packages (DIPs) will continue to dominate mainstream IC package applications.
- Plastic DIPs will be the dominant packages through the 1980s.
- DIPs will address the less than 48-pin package segment.
- Flatpack (a mature package technology) usage is declining. Prices will increase as volume declines.
- DIP and flatpack will meet the 8- through 48-lead package demands.
- Use of CERDIPs will decline. CERDIP life cycle will be boosted by lower system cost hermetic applications.
- Small-outline (SO) packages will be primarily used for small pin-count packages of 28 pins or less.
- Chip carrier use will begin to grow in volume in 1986 and develop fully in the 1990s.
- Leadless ceramic chip carriers (LCCCs) will address the more than 40 configurations.
- Plastic Chip Carriers (PCCs) will address the 68-pin-or-less segment with 84-, 100-, and 124-lead versions under development.
- Pin grid arrays (PGAs) will address the more than 84-pin VLSI segment.
- TAB and flip-chip technologies for chip-on-board (COB) applications will grow significantly in the future.

Packaging

Figure 1 shows DATAQUEST's estimates of package consumption related to the number of pins required by the circuit. The SO- and DIP-type packages will share the low-end segment. The chip-carrier and PGA packages are particularly suited to the 20-and-higher pin counts, with TAB clearly addressing lead counts beyond the 200 range.

Figures 2 and 3 illustrate changes in functional density over time. We believe that this trend away from the present level of functional density around 7 percent to the projected 42 percent in the 1990s is due to:

- The movement from conventional DIPs to SMDs
- Increased functional density
- Package pitch reductions

Figure 4 illustrates the potential opportunities for system cost reduction through the use of SMD package technologies. System cost is a function of size and materials. The lowest system cost can therefore be achieved via:

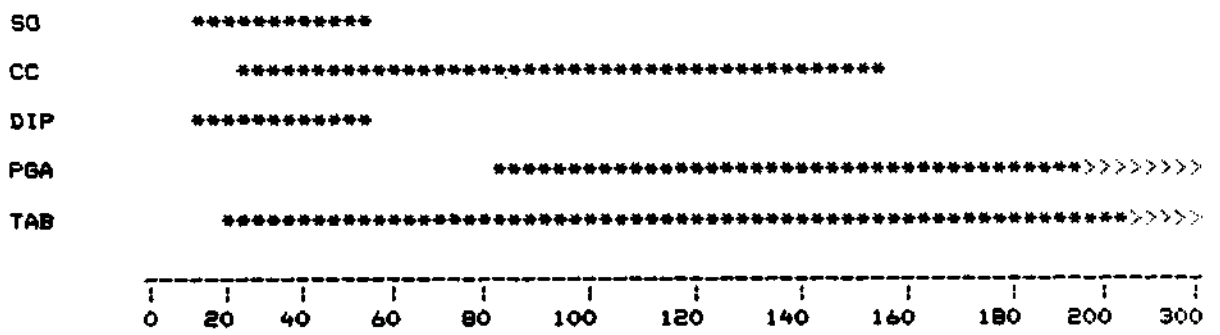
- The densest chip technology--VLSI
- Minimum chip encapsulation--SMT
- The lowest cost substrates--Plastic or epoxy glass
- Automated Assembly

Ultimately, we believe that cost reductions will be achieved by direct chip-on-board (COB) techniques. DATAQUEST expects COB techniques, already commonplace in the low-end consumer-oriented products, to mature sufficiently with the necessary quality and reliability to be used in other application areas.

Packaging

Figure 1

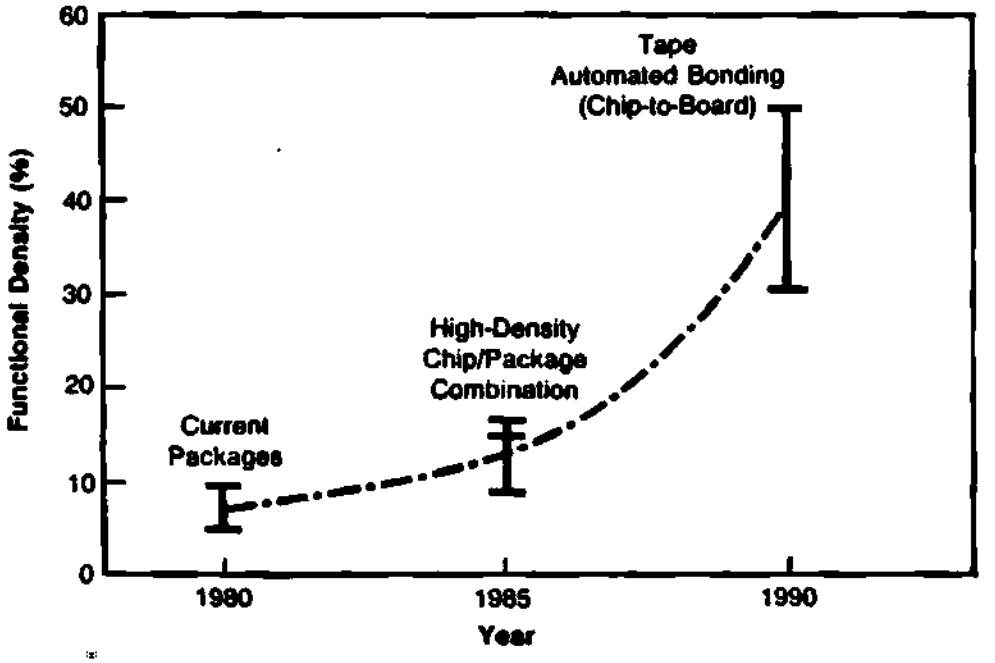
ESTIMATED PACKAGE CONSUMPTION AS A FUNCTION OF PIN COUNT



Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Figure 2

PACKAGE FUNCTIONAL DENSITY

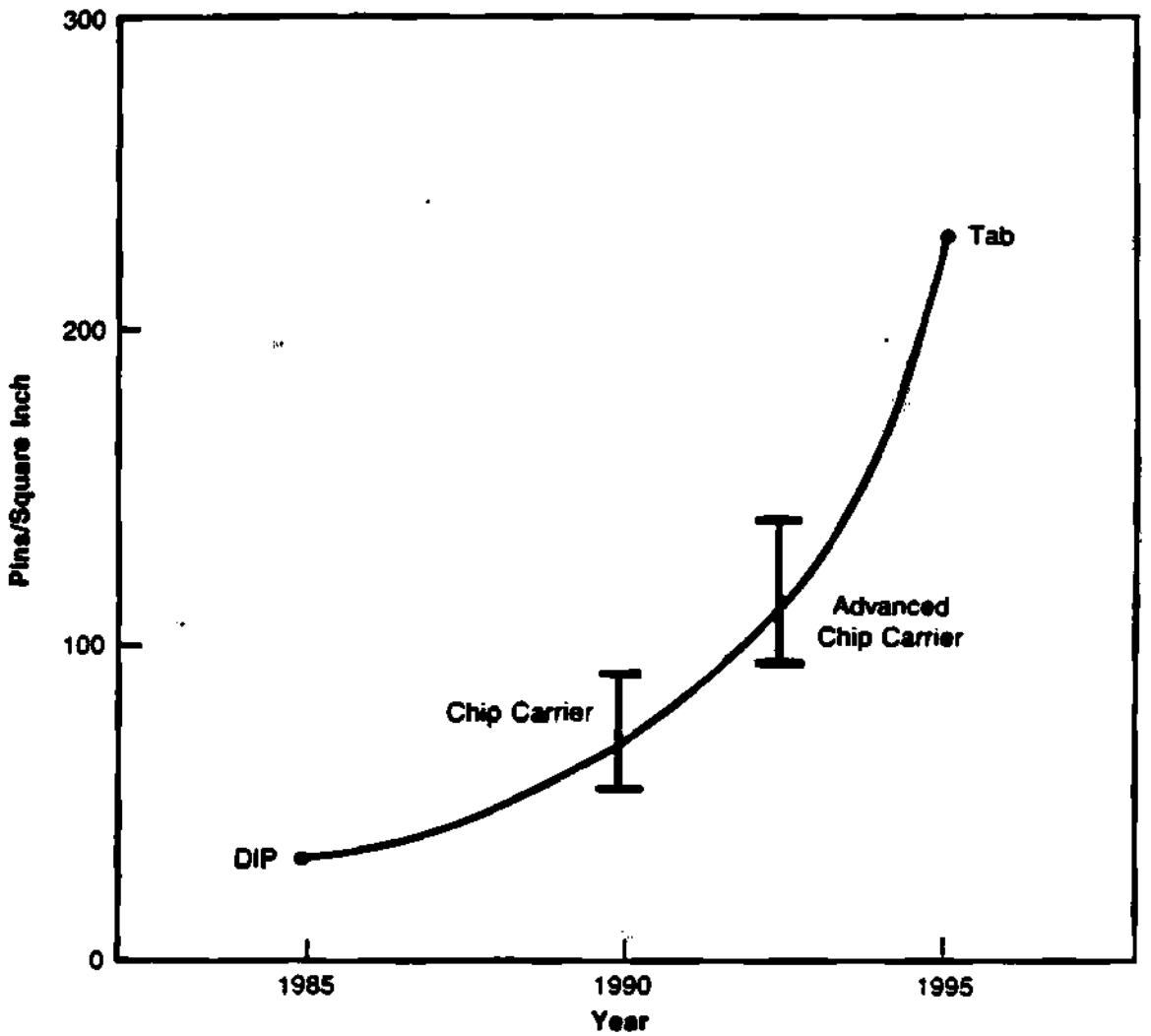


*Defined as Chip Area/Package Footprint Area

Source: Motorola

Figure 3

ACHIEVABLE BOARD DENSITIES BY PACKAGING TECHNOLOGY

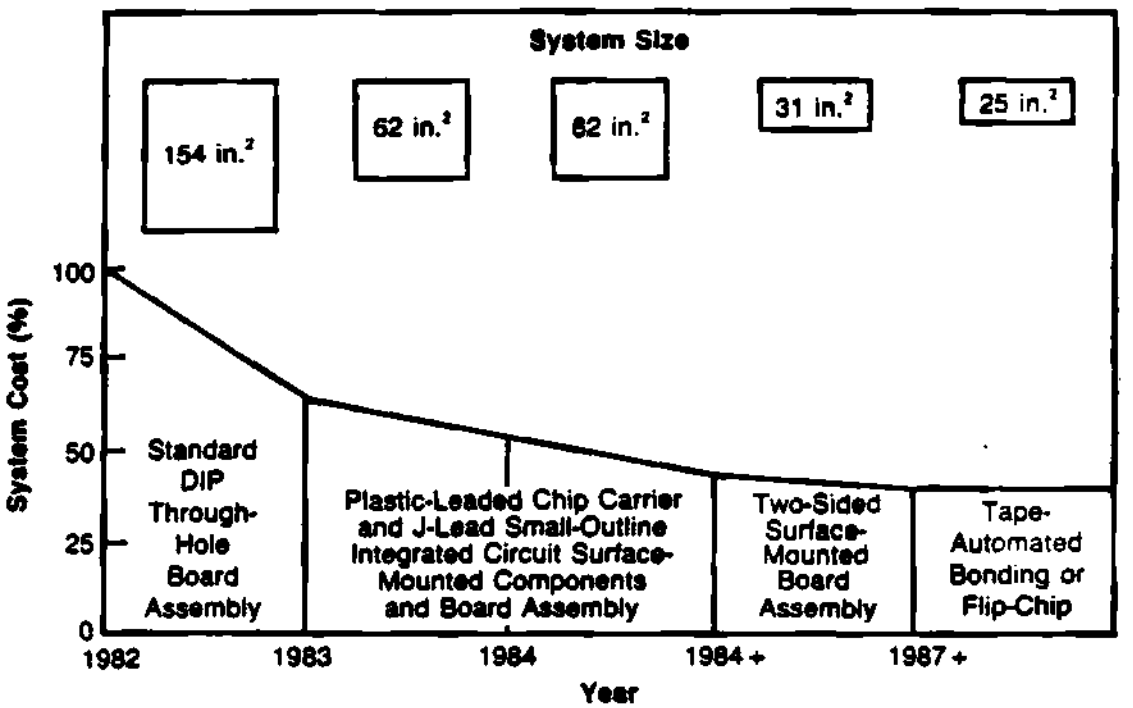


Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Packaging

Figure 4

COST-REDUCTION TRENDS



Relative Cost of Through-Hole, Surface Mount, and Bare Tab Systems.

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Surface Mount--Where Is It Going?

Although there has been a tremendous amount of enthusiasm for surface-mount technology (SMT), implementation of SMT by both manufacturer and user is taking longer than anticipated--definitely a case of more interest and development than momentum. At this point in time, SMT continues to be a niche market technology, rather than a true mainstream technology. Concentrated use of surface-mounted devices is occurring in applications where small size and weight are the primary issues, such as:

- Portable consumer products
- Automobile radio and engine control modules
- Disk drive head controllers
- Aircraft cockpit controllers, satellite and missile systems
- Very high density memory products

To better understand where surface mount is going, one must understand who is doing what in SMT. Table 4 lists the current estimated end use of surface mount by region.

Table 4

SURFACE-MOUNT TECHNOLOGY--END-USE SEGMENTS
1985

	Japan	Europe	United States
End Use	Consumer	Telecommunications	Computers
Driving Force	Small size	Reliability	Cost reduction
Percent of ICs Consumed Worldwide	35%	18%	41%
Percent of ICs in SMT	16.7%	1.8%	1.6%
Dominant SMT Approach	TAB/COB	SO	COB/SO/CC/TAB

Source: Rose Associates
DATAQUEST
March 1986

Packaging

The automobile industry is the second largest user of SMDs in the United States. Delco currently produces approximately 35,000 SMT boards per day for engine controllers and 15,000 print-and-etch boards per day for radio models.

Table 5 shows the percent of SMDs in specific consumer product areas in Japan in 1985 and their estimated use by 1990. The information is based on a survey conducted by the Japanese Printed Circuit Association.

Table 5

SURFACE-MOUNTED DEVICES IN JAPANESE CONSUMER PRODUCTS
1985-1990

Applications	1985	1990
Camera	86.9%*	94.3%
Electronic clock and watch	45.0%	75.0%
Video camera	40.1%	69.9%
Radio/radio cassette	28.6%	47.6%
Sewing machine	0%	42.5%
Stereo	4.2%	40.9%
VTR	8.8%	36.2%
Calculator**	23.3%	35.0%
Television set	12.5%	31.9%

*Percentages = $\frac{\text{Number of SMDs}}{\text{Total number of components}}$

**Nearly 99% of the functions are in one LSI

Source: JPCA
DATAQUEST
March 1986

Packaging

As shown in Table 6, National Semiconductor Corporation, Signetics, and Texas Instruments have introduced products in surface mount. However, the majority of other U.S. companies are not making the capital investment in surface-mount assembly lines and are relying more on the services of both onshore and offshore assembly companies. Highly automated assembly lines are being established in Hong Kong, Korea, Singapore, and Taiwan. It has been estimated that over the past five years, subcontract assembly has increased from 9 percent to 17 percent. Anam, the largest contract assembler in Korea, invested approximately $100 million in 1984 to upgrade its assembly facility to more than double its assembly capacity. Anam services approximately 48 U.S. semiconductor companies including Fairchild, Linear Technology, LSI Technology, Motorola, and SEEQ. Amkor/Anam is also planning an onshore facility in Pennsylvania for on-line production in 1986.

Table 6

SURFACE-MOUNT MANUFACTURING STATUS

Company	Comments
National Semiconductor Corporation	All TTL, analog products available in surface mount; LS, ALS products in SO in less than 20 pins; PCC in 20 pins and more
	5 percent of product types representing 30 percent of volume now surface mount
	Tape-Pak--National's third-generation package; lead count feasibility to 284 leads/package on 0.020-inch centers
Signetics/ North American Philips	Plans to offer all TTL and analog products in surface mount
	Using SO for 28 pins or less; PCC above 28 pins
	Implementing TAB over conventional wire bonded packages
Texas Instruments	All bipolar logic, linear CMOS, and CMOS logic products available as surface mount
	Offering SO integrated circuits, PCC, and single in-line package (SIP)

Source: DATAQUEST
Marcn 1986

Packaging

PACKAGING TECHNOLOGY

Major user concerns over choosing the most suitable package design include:

- System application
- Overall system cost
- Manufacturer capabilities
- Reliability considerations
- Environmental constraints
- Assembly techniques available

The selection process will continue to grow even more complex as new component and packaging technologies appear. For this reason, end users must make a concerted effort to analyze the advantages and disadvantages of VLSI device packages.

Through-the-Board

The printed circuit board with plated through-holes was developed in 1953 to replace the labor-intensive method of hand wiring electronic circuits. However, the through-the-board concept of mounting components on copper-etched phenolic or glass epoxy boards with predrilled holes was not implemented until the late 1960s.

The leads of ICs and discrete and passive components are inserted through the plated holes of the printed circuit board for soldering on the back side. The mounting holes and other holes for connecting the interconnect layers are gold plated to effect reliable contacts for easy solderability.

When all of the components are mounted, the printed circuit board is passed through a wave soldering process. During soldering, liquid solder flows across the bottom of the board and adheres to the leads and walls of the holes. This completes the electrical and mechanical connections.

Packaging

Surface Mount

Small-outline (SO) packages and surface-mount techniques were developed in Europe for the Swiss watch industry in the late 1960s. SMT emerged in the United States in the mid-1960s in the form of surface-attached flatpacks for use in missile-guidance computers. Japanese manufacturers adopted SMT in the early 1970s, as the need for miniaturization and cost reduction arose in consumer products such as watches and calculators.

Evolutionary changes in technology from LSI to VLSI and VHSIC devices are driving the transition from through-the-board insertion to surface mount. Table 7 lists the positive and negative attributes of SMT.

Table 8 shows the percent of cost and size reductions achieved using surface-mount technology to repackage a printed wire board assembled in DIPs. Typically, the printed circuit board size can be reduced 30 to 70 percent when implementing SMT.

Reductions in plated through-holes and board layers also reduce or, in some cases, eliminate causes of failure, thus enhancing the reliability of a product. Table 9 is a comparison of DIP and PCC reliability test results performed at Texas Instruments' surface-mount research facility. Similar comparisons were made with SO and LCCC packaged components.

Another benefit of surface-mount devices is their ability to integrate with automated assembly technology, contributing further to improved reliability and cost reductions. Table 10 lists the estimated equipment costs for setting up a 5,000- to 30,000-square-foot surface-mount production line. Although the initial investment cost of equipment is high, reduced assembly costs are realized through less material, less space, ease of manufacture, and improved reliability. Eventually, surface-mount system cost will cross over through-hole cost via higher production volumes, capital equipment appreciation, and yield improvements.

Table 7

ATTRIBUTES OF SURFACE-MOUNT TECHNOLOGY

Positive

Features	Surface-Mount
Reduced Size & Weight	Packages 30 to 70 percent smaller; on both sides of the board
Cost	Smaller boards
	Lower component costs
	Elimination of plated through-holes
	Automated assembly
	Less solder
Reliability	Enhanced by having fewer interconnections
Increased Performance	Shorter traces on substrate
	Shorter device leads
	Large variety of substrate materials (ceramic, plastic, porcelainized steel, mylar, glass, fiberglass)

Negative

Features	Surface-Mount
Cost	Reduced cost offset by high equipment costs
Reliability	Thermal stress resulting in cracks on die and internal corrosion
	Increased electrostatic discharge (ESD) problems due to handling and exposed parts
	Flux removal with solder dip
	Unseen copper slivers and burrs that occur during mechanical removal in solder dip

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Packaging

Table 8.

ASSEMBLY TECHNIQUE COMPARISON

	Through-Hole	Surface-Mount	% Reduction
Board Size	11" X 14" (154 sq. in.)	6.5" X 9.6" (64 sq. in.)	58%
No. of Layers	6	4	33%
Board Cost	$150	$75	50%

Table 9

RELIABILITY OF A 64K DRAM DIP VERSUS PCC

Test	Duration	DIP Failure Rate	PCC Failure Rate	DIP FITS*	PCC FITS
OP Life 125° C	1,000 hours	0.14%	0.18%	70**	122
T/Hum 85° C/85% RH	1,000 hours	0.44%	0.20%		
T/C -65° C/150° C	1,000 Cyc	0.51%	0.11%		

*Failures per billion hours
**60% upper confidence limit at 55° C junction temperature
Operating life: 1,000 hours at 125° C
Temperature humidity: 85° C/85 % RH
Temperature cycle: -65° C/+150° C

Source: Texas Instruments

Table 10

ESTIMATED SURFACE-MOUNT PRODUCTION LINE COSTS

Equipment	Cost
Solder screener	$ 60,000
Pick and place	200,000
Soldering system	90,000
Board cleaning	60,000
Visual inspection (automated)	120,000
Board tester (manual)	100,000
Miscellaneous (repair, etc.)	100,000
Total	$730,000

Source: Tektronix, Inc.

Packaging

Table 11 lists available sources of pick-and-place equipment, and test equipment used in surface-mount technology.

Table 11

PICK-AND-PLACE/TEST EQUIPMENT SUPPLIERS

Pick-and-Place	Inspection/Test
Amistar Corporation	Automation Unlimited, Inc.
Celmacs Corporation	John Chatillon & Sons, Inc.
Contact Systems	Cognex Corporation
Dynapert-Precima	ETP
Engineered Automation	Everett/Charles, Inc.
Excellon Automation	GenRad
Fuji America Corporation	IRT Corporation
Heller Industries, Inc.	Mannix(Henry Mann, Inc.)
Ismeca USA Inc.	Photonic Automation
Jergens, Inc.	Projectina Ltd.
Mannix (Henry Mann, Inc.)	Teradyne
MCT Circuit Assembly Division	UTI Instruments Company
Nitto Kogyo Co., Ltd.	Vanzetti Systems
Panasonic Industrial Co.	Vicheck
North American Philips Co.	Zehntel Production Services
Quad Systems Corporation	
Rohm Corporation	
Siemens Components Inc.	
Teledyne TAC	
TDK Corporation of America	
Universal Instruments Corporation	
Zevatech Inc.	

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Packaging

An alternative to capital equipment investment is the use of an assembly service that specializes in surface-mount technology. The key to using outside services is to maintain a close liaison with engineers during the design stage so that the correct component mix and assembly are chosen to arrive at the optimum benefits of SMT. The following is a list of companies located in the United States and specializing in SMT services and seminars:

- Array Technology--Cupertino, California
- ASMD, Inc.--San Diego, California
- AWI--Santa Clara, California
- Centralab--Milwaukee, Wisconsin
- Integrated Networks, Inc.--Costa Mesa, California
- Micro Industries--Westerville, Ohio
- Nugraphix Group, Inc.--Los Gatos, California
- SMT Technology Center/NA Philips--Milwaukee, Wisconsin
- Solectron--San Jose, California

Reliability and Environmental Constraints

The main inhibiting factor for volume production of SMDs by large users (i.e., IBM, AT&T, Hewlett-Packard (HP), and Digital Equipment Corporation) is the lack of reliability studies on surface mount at this time. Hewlett-Packard's involvement in surface mount is basically in research and development, studying the physics and chemistry of surface-mount technology. HP's SMT activity is taking place mostly in the computer and medical divisions, where size and weight of SMT are a plus. Approximately 15 groups at HP are currently "looking" at SMT.

The largest contributors to ongoing reliability studies on surface-mount technology are National Semiconductor Corporation, North American Phillips Corporation/Signetics, and Texas Instruments.

Packaging

Thermal Management

One of the major considerations in package designs is the ability to cool the die or to conduct heat away from it. The heat generated from electronic devices affects not only the electrical characteristics of the circuits, but also the boards and substrates used. Temperature fluctuations cause both the boards and the material to expand and contract at different rates.

One solution to the thermal management problem that is employed by Texas Instruments and other manufacturers is to use a printed circuit board material with the same thermal coefficient of expansion (TCE) as the component. Table 12 lists the advantages and disadvantages of specific board materials in current package development.

Table 12

PRINTED WIRING BOARD MATERIAL

Board Material	TCE (ppm/°C)	Advantages	Disadvantages
Epoxy Fiberglass	12-16	Substrate size, weight, most common available board material, conventional PWB processing	Poor thermal conductivity, TCE provides good match to TI's PLCC but poor for ceramic
Polyimide Kevlar	4-8	Substrate size, weight, repairability, uses conventional PWB processing and matches TCE of ceramic	Difficult to machine, high cost, resin microcracking and water adsorption
Polyimide Quartz	6-8	Size, weight, repairability, good dielectric properties, conventional PWB processing techniques, CTS match	Difficult to drill vias, availability
Alumina (Ceramic)	6.5	Exactly matches TCE of ceramic chip carriers, good heat thermal conductivity	Weight, cost, fragility, requires thick-film screening processing, limited substrate size
Copper-Invar-Copper	6.4	TCE of ceramic, excellent thermal conductivity, inherent ground plane, EMI/RFI shielding	Some weight increase, requires thick-film screening processing
Compliant Layer Substrate	Note 1	Substrate size, repairability, good dielectric properties, TCE match to ceramic through ceramic through compliant layer	Poor thermal conductivity, still in development stage
Epoxy Kevlar	6-8	Substrate size, weight, repairability, STE match, conventional PWB processing techniques	Resin microcracking after temp cycle and water adsorption
Composite Metal Foil MLB's	Note 2	Substrate size, repairability, uses conventional MLB processing techniques, provides good TCE match	Available only for MLS's, not commonly available

Notes: 1 Compliant layer conforms to TCE of the ceramic chip carrier and to base PWB material
2 Substitutes copper-clad invar foil for PWR and GND planes used in multi-layer boards. The copper-clad invar supplies TCE compliancy.

Source: Texas Instruments

Packaging

Directions in Cooling and Heat Removal

As LSI devices become more complex, they tend to dissipate more power. If this power is not dissipated by the package, the temperature of the semiconductor die can increase to the point where performance or reliability can be degraded. Power densities have steadily increased, reaching 8 to 10 times the 1970 levels in low-end systems. Design-based system-level solutions being implemented to improve power-handling capabilities include:

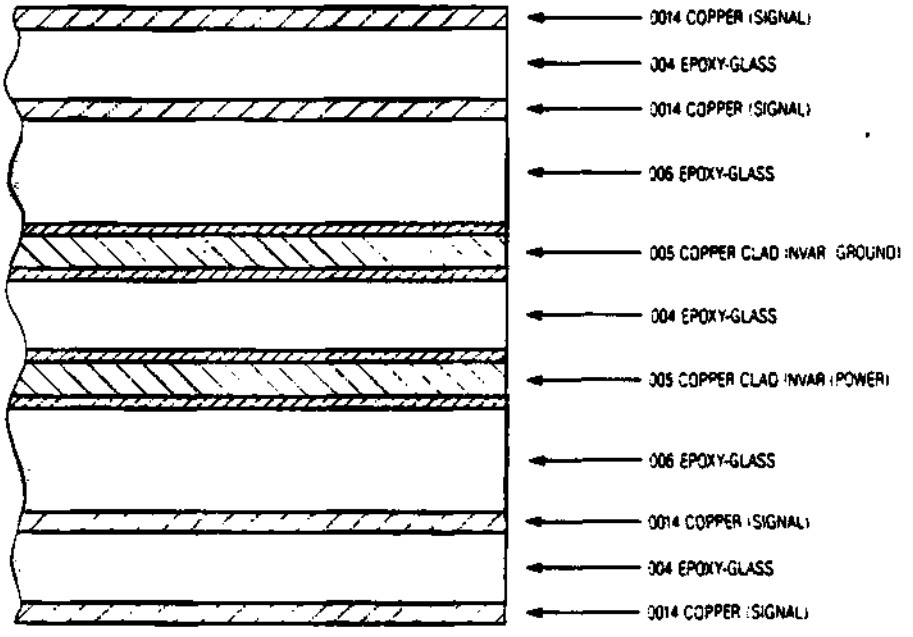
- Cooling techniques
  - Providing direct thermal as well as electrical paths at system interfaces, as junction design and materials choices will minimize thermal resistances
  - Placement of heat-generating devices on the board in contact with brackets or other paths to the environment
  - Designing board spacing and placement with air flow in mind
- Heat removal techniques at the board level
  - Constructing the board with cooling pipes through which conductive/convective cooling may be accomplished
  - Use of copper core or hollow core to increase the surface of heat transfer
- Heat removal techniques at the package level
  - Using mold heat-conductive inserts in the body of a plastic package
  - Affixing heat sinks to packages for high-power devices
- Heat removal techniques using specific materials at the board and package levels
  - Incorporating thermally conductive fillers into epoxy glass to increase conductivity
  - Supplementing glass fibers with inert fillers to decrease the board's thermal coefficient of expansion

- Building thermal "bridges" between the device and the board with thermally conductive glue
- Developing copper alloy lead frame materials with increased conductivity

Texas Instruments has accomplished a strategic substrate development using multilayers of copper-Invar-copper. As shown in Figure 5, the material is a sandwich of an Invar core between two layers of copper. Texas Instruments has found that the low TCE of the core dominates the TCE of the overall board for a reliable mount of a leadless ceramic chip carrier.

Figure 5

COPPER-CLAD INVAR MULTILAYER BOARD



Source: Texas Instruments

Packaging

National Semiconductor Corporation is currently using perforated lead frames in their small-outline (SO) packages to prevent contamination on the inside of the package and the formation of cracks on the die. Use of the perforated lead frames allows a continuous path for molten compound, thus improving the reliability of the product. National uses a lead frame with a high-copper-content alloy rather than alloy-42, as copper alloy leads have better thermal dissipation and thermal expansion and cost less than alloy-42.

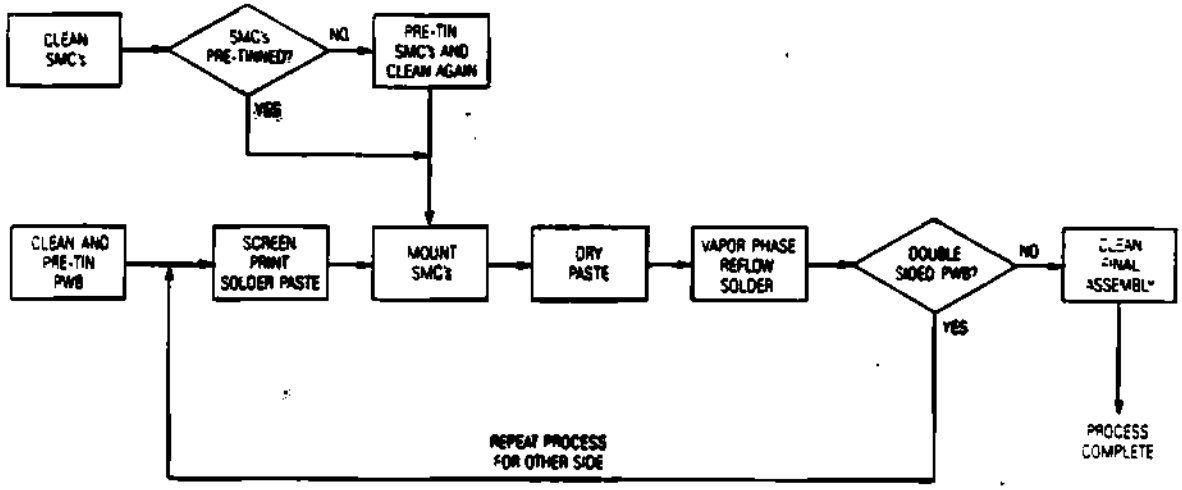
Surface-Mount Assembly

Surface mounting is a process whereby a packaged IC or other component is designed to be physically mounted on the surface of a printed circuit board (PCB) instead of inserted into holes through the PCB. Surface-mount package technologies for active components consist of small-outline, chip-carrier (plastic and ceramic), and tape automated bonding. Passive components, chip resistors, and chip capacitors are also available in surface-mount packages.

During the surface-mount assembly process, as shown on Figure 6 interconnect traces are screen printed onto the surface of the PCB. Screen printing is a widely used method for applying solder paste to the PCB. After applying the solder paste to the board, the components are placed on the board manually or with automated pick-and-place equipment. Some types of pick-and-place equipment apply glue to the component before placing it on the board. The board is then cured to set the solder paste and adhesive. Solder paste is preferable to glue as the primary adhesive because the component tends to self-align as the solder melts during the reflow process, matching leads to the traces. The board and its components can either be baked at 50 to 80° C for 45 minutes or allowed to stand at room temperature for approximately 12 hours. If devices are required on the bottom side of the board, the board may be inverted at this point and the process repeated on the other side. The board is then run through a reflow soldering system. After reflow, the board is cleaned to remove the flux (metal binding medium used in soldering) residues and is visually and electrically inspected.

Figure 6

SURFACE-MOUNT ASSEMBLY PROCESS



Source: Texas Instruments

Surface Mount/Through-Hole Mix

When extreme density is required or when components are not available in surface-mount packages, surface-mount components can be mixed with through-hole components on the same board. This process usually entails reflow soldering the surface-mount components to one side of the board, then wave soldering the through-hole components onto the other side of the board.

Soldering Methods

Besides hand soldering, other soldering methods include wave soldering, infrared (IR) reflow soldering, laser soldering, and vapor phase reflow soldering, all of which can be used to varying successful degrees in surface-mount assembly.

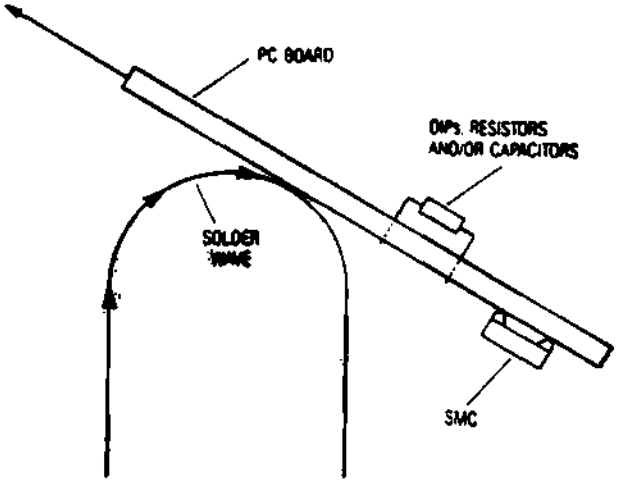
Wave Soldering

Traditionally, printed circuit assemblies have been wave soldered in a process whereby the board is moved over a flowing wave of molten solder with the solder adhering to the bottom side of the board. Wave solder systems can also be used to reflow the solder for surface mounting of components. Reflow soldering involves heating of the board assembly on

which solder paste has been screened onto the PCB metal pads. The board is heated until the paste melts and flows around the leads and pads. Many manufacturers currently assemble both surface-mounted components and through-the-board components on one board (see Figure 7) because many products are not available in surface mount. Various surface-mount and lead-insertion methods include all on top, all on bottom, or some on top and some on bottom.

Figure 7

WAVE SOLDERING A MIXTURE OF DIPs AND SMDs



Source: Texas Instruments

Infrared Reflow Soldering

Infrared reflow soldering involves absorption of radiant energy to heat the assembly and materials. The assembly board passes through a preheated zone that slowly heats the solder paste. After preheating, the assembly enters the next heating zone, where increased temperatures result in reflow. The assembly is then cooled. Infrared reflow solder equipment is available from the following suppliers:

- Argus International--Hopewell, New Jersey
- Dynatherm--Santa Clara, California

- Electrovert--St. Louis, Missouri
- Intex--Brookefield, Connecticut
- Mannix (Div. of Henry Mann Inc.)--Huntingdon Valley, Pennsylvania
- Radiant Technology Corporation--Cerritos, California
- Sikama International--Santa Barbara, California
- Vitronics Corporation--Newburyport, Massachusetts

Laser Soldering

Laser soldering involves applying a rapid pulse-like heat for a short duration to individual solder joints but not to the component. The infrared heat is radiated from either a carbon dioxide (CO^2) or solid-state Neodymium-doped Yitrium-Aluminum-Garnet (Nd:YAG) YAG laser. While a more precise and reliable solder joint can be achieved through laser soldering, its primary disadvantage is speed and therefore is considered a specialized soldering technique. This soldering process is used for dense packaging and is an ideal process for attaching heat-sensitive components. Laser soldering is used in niche packaging application areas such as military and ceramic hybrids. Laser soldering systems are available from the following suppliers:

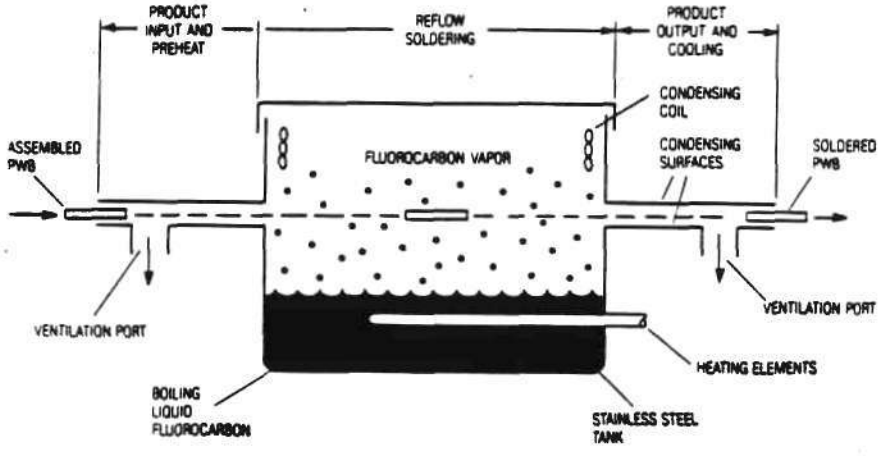
- Apollo Laser--Los Angeles, California
- Coherent General--Sturbridge, Massachusetts
- US Laser--Waldwick, New Jersey
- XMR--Santa Clara, California
- Lumonics, Inc.--Tempe, Arizona

Vapor Phase Reflow Soldering

The vapor phase reflow soldering method was developed by Bell Laboratories. Basically, a component assembly is immersed in a layer of vaporized inert fluorocarbon. The fluid boils at 215° C, which is exactly the correct temperature for solder reflow. The vaporized fluid condenses on the assembly and surfaces that it contacts, heating all surfaces uniformly and causing the solder paste to reflow. Figures 8 and 9 illustrate the single-layer in-line and two-layer batch vapor systems.

Figure 8

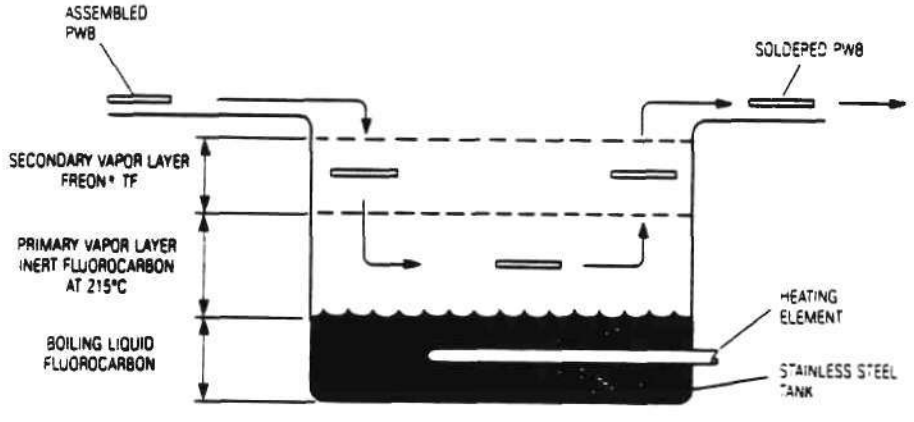
IN-LINE SINGLE VAPOR PHASE SYSTEM



Source: Texas Instruments

Figure 9

BATCH-TYPE VAPOR PHASE SYSTEM



Source: Texas Instruments

Packaging

Vapor phase equipment suppliers include:

- Baron-Blakeslee--Melrose Park, Illinois
- Centech Corporation--Minneapolis, Minnesota
- Corpane Industries, Inc.--Louisville, Kentucky
- Hollis Engineering--Nashua, New Hampshire
- HTC--Concord, Massachusetts
- Lenape Equipment Co.--Lakewood, New Jersey
- Mannix (Div. of Henry Mann, Inc.)--Huntingdon Valley, Pennsylvania
- Multicore--Westbury, New York

Lead Frames

Lead frames are the basic package assembly for plastic and CERDIP packages. Production quantities of lead frames are fabricated by stamping. Stamps are precision cutting tools that, like cookie cutters, extract the desired patterns from sheets of metal. Stamping produces lead frames at low unit costs after the expensive cutting tool has been amortized. Therefore, it is a good process for high-quantity production. Low-quantity production typically uses etched lead frames to eliminate the tool costs and lead times required for stamped frames. Table 13 lists the manufacturers of lead frames.

Table 13

LEAD FRAME SUPPLIERS

Company	Location	Stamped	Etched
Advalloy, Inc.	Palo Alto, California	X	X
Advanced Semiconductor Materials Int. Inc.	Phoenix, Arizona	X	X
Caribidex	Southgate, Michigan	X	
Composite Technical Alloys, Inc.	Attelboro, Massachusetts	X	X
Dage Limited	Great Britain	X	X
Dyna-Craft, Inc.	Santa Clara, California	X	X
W.C. Heraeus GmbH	West Germany	X	X
Interconics (BMC)	St. Paul, Minnesota	X	X
Interconsal Assoc. Inc.	Palo Alto, California	X	X
International Leadframe Corp.	Santa Clara, California	X	X
Kras Corporation	Fairless Hills, Pennsylvania	X	X
Meco Metal Finishing Engineers BV	The Netherlands	X	X
Oberg Industries, Inc.	Freeport, Pennsylvania	X	
Oriental Chemical Ind.	Seoul, Korea	X	X
Pan Metal Corp.	Los Angeles, California	X	X
Shinko Electric America, Inc.	Santa Clara, California	X	X
Stamping Technology	Milpitas, California	X	
Sumitomo Metal Mining	Fremont, California	X	X
Texas Instruments	Attelboro, Massachusetts	X	
Wadsworth/Bryant	Menlo Park, California	X	X
Worltek Inter., Ltd.	San Mateo, California	X	X
Youngwood Metals	Murraysville, Pennsylvania	X	

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Ceramic Package Suppliers

As previously discussed, ceramic packages include ceramic DIP, ceramic flatpack, ceramic chip carriers, and pin grid array packages. Table 14 lists the available suppliers of ceramic packages.

Table 14

CERAMIC PACKAGE SUPPLIERS

Company	Location
AMP, Inc.	Harrisburg, Pennsylvania
ASPE, Inc.	Fairchild, New Jersey
AVX Ceramics Corporation	Myrtle Beach, South Carolina
Airpax Corporation	Cambridge, Maryland
Augat, Inc.	Attelboro, Massachusetts
Barry & Associates	Los Altos, California
Bourns, Inc.	Riverside, California
Brush Wellman, Inc.	Cleveland, Ohio
Burndy, Inc.	Norwalk, Connecticut
CTS Corporation	Elkhart, Indiana
Ceradyne, Inc.	Santa Ana, California
Circuit Assembly Corporation	Irvine, California
Coors/Ceramics	Golden, Colorado
Dage Limited	Great Britain
Dande Plastics, Inc.	Somerville, New Jersey
Demetron, Inc.	Union City, California
Diacon, Inc.	San Diego, California
Emerson & Cuming, Inc.	Billerica, Massachusetts
GE Ceramics, Inc.	Chattanooga, Tennessee
Gibson-Egan Co.	Duarte, California
W.G. Heraeus GmbH	West Germany
Hestia Technologies	Santa Clara, California
Hoechst Ceramtec NA Inc.	Providence, Rhode Island
Hoechst Informations-Technik	West Germany
Interamics	San Diego, California
Kras Corporation	Fairless Hills, Pennsylvania
Kyocera International, Inc.	San Diego, California
M/A-COM Semiconductor Products	Burlington, Massachusetts
Microelectronic Packaging, Inc.	Scottsdale, Arizona
NTK Technical Ceramics	Nagoya, Japan
Naramics	Nagoya, Japan
National Beryllia Corporation	Haskall, New Jersey
Rosentnal Technik NA, Inc.	Providence, Rhode Island
Shinko Electric America, Inc.	Santa Clara, California
Spec Industries, Inc.	San Marcos, California
Textool Products	Irving, Texas
Vichem Corporation	Stanford, California
Wells Electronics, Inc.	South Bend, Indiana

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

Packaging

Sockets

Integrated circuits in high-lead-count packages are expensive and difficult to remove from soldered boards. Sockets allow integrated circuits to be readily removed or replaced during assembly and test or retest; they also help to isolate particular functions and to diagnose problems.

Sockets are frequently used with standard JEDEC (Joint Electronic Devices Engineering Council) and non-JEDEC chip-carrier packages because sockets reduce the problem of stress due to thermal expansion. The glass epoxy circuit boards that are commonly used in commercial systems expand with heat at a different rate than does the ceramic material in the chip carrier. The open-frame construction of the socket permits maximum air flow, allowing even heat dissipation on all sides. The flexible leads, lids, and latches of the socket ensure uniform electrical contact and absorb the expansion while eliminating or reducing rejections due to breakage or marring. Sockets have been designed for burn-in applications at up to 200° C.

PACKAGE DATA

Dual-In-Line Packages

The dual-in-line packages (DIPs) employing both plastic and ceramic technologies currently account for more than 85 percent of the IC package consumption in North America. The standard DIP introduced in the 1960s has dominated IC package applications, growing with LSI developments from 14 leads up to 64 leads. The DIP derives its name from its two rows of in-line leads. The dual-in-line package is performance limited by its 0.100 pitch or lead spacing. Thus, while pin counts up to about 64 can be handled by dual-in-line packaging, the size, weight, and electrical performance characteristics of the DIP are better suited to the less than 48-pin count. The demands for density have promoted development of new DIPs. The shrink DIP uses either 0.079-inch or 0.050-inch centers for the pins. Hitachi has introduced its digital components in a shrink DIP package with 1.778mm lead pitch, the skinny DIP with a 2.54mm lead pitch, and the zig-zag-in-line package (ZIP) which has two rows with a 2.54mm lead pitch. DATAQUEST estimates that approximately 3 percent of the 256K DRAMs manufactured worldwide are currently packaged in ZIPs. Beyond 48 leads, an insertion-mount type of package, such as PGA, LCCC, flatpack, or quad-in-line package (QUIP) becomes more feasible.

Figure 10 illustrates the various types of DIPs available.

Packaging

Figure 10

DUAL-IN-LINE PACKAGE TYPES

Plastic	Ceramic
Encapsulated	Co-fired
Premolded	CERDIP
	Ceramic glass

Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

The ceramic DIPs incorporate a multilayer ceramic body featuring brazed-on leads and a die-mounting cavity that has a solder-sealed metal lid. The major sealing technique uses a gold-plated metal lid and a gold-tin eutectic sealing preform. A more cost-effective ceramic DIP is one incorporating a glass seal to attach the lid to the package. MOS PROMs, which can be erased with ultraviolet light, are sealed with a transparent quartz lid. Ceramic DIPs consist of top-brazed, bottom-brazed, and side-brazed packages.

CERDIP packages consist of two ceramic body parts and a lead frame. After the IC chip is attached and wire bonded to the lead frame, the pieces are run through a furnace and fused with a glass seal. CERDIPs are typically available in the DIP configuration with available pin counts of 8, 14, 16, 22, 24, 28, or 40 pins. Improvements in plastic molding compounds and increased popularity and demand for chip carriers and SO packages will displace CERDIPs as standard packages.

CERDIP packages offer the least-expensive hermetic technology available. Historically, the majority of CERDIP packages have been used in military applications because they meet both military package specifications and overall mechanical requirements for a hermetically sealable package. CERDIPs will continue to be the key package for military end-use applications through the end of the decade. However, critical light weight and size issues along with improvements in hermetic construction and package reliability will drive chip carrier and TAB usage by the military market. For ground-based systems applications with heavy cooling and thermal demands, pin grid arrays have been shown viable for use in military programs. Major improvements in packaging methods used in military programs have been made by the VHSIC program contractors. Package types developed for VHSIC chips are pin/pad arrays and chip carriers.

Packaging

When the CERDIP package was first developed, it was not considered suitable for MOS applications because contaminants released from the glass during sealing could cause degradation of the MOS die. Improvements in die-attach materials and sealing techniques have now largely eliminated this problem. In 1983, Intel Corporation developed a silver-loaded glass system, as a nongold die attach substitute in CERDIP packages. The silver/glass system offered significant cost and processing advantages for use in CERDIP packages. A CERDIP package with a bull's-eye lid used in MOS EPROM and EEPROM applications incorporates a glass lid that will transmit the ultraviolet light used for erasing the PROMs. Fujitsu recently introduced its 512K CMOS EPROM in a CERDIP package, and Xicor introduced its 256K EEPROM in a 28-pin CERDIP package.

Plastic encapsulated DIPs are assembled using a transfer molding technique incorporating epoxy materials and lead frames. The IC chip is attached and wire bonded to the lead frame. Sealing is effected by encapsulating the IC and lead frame in injection-molded epoxy. Traditionally, plastic ICs have been bonded with gold wires. More recently, manufacturers have implemented silver plating on the package instead of gold.

As plastic is a poor thermal conductor, manufacturers are using copper lead frames to enhance power-handling capabilities. While the plastic package is not hermetic, it does offer a low-cost alternative to ceramics.

Flatpacks

The standard flatpack configurations have center-to-center 50-mil lead spacing. Flatpacks are essentially flat rectangular packages with bodies constructed of either alumina or beryllia. Early flatpacks were designed with glass-to-metal seals. Traditionally, flatpacks have not been considered a mainstream industry-standard package. Flatpacks have been used significantly in military applications to satisfy dense packaging requirements. Flatpacks are surface mounted; because of their structure, they are difficult to automate. Flatpacks are also frequently welded to the printed circuit board, making them susceptible to lead damage in handling.

Chip Carriers

The chip carrier is a four-sided package with leads on all four sides of the carrier, usually arranged on 0.050-inch center-line spacings. Chip carrier configurations are available in 44, 52, 68, 84, 96, and recently as many as 300 leads. Chip carriers may be leaded or leadless

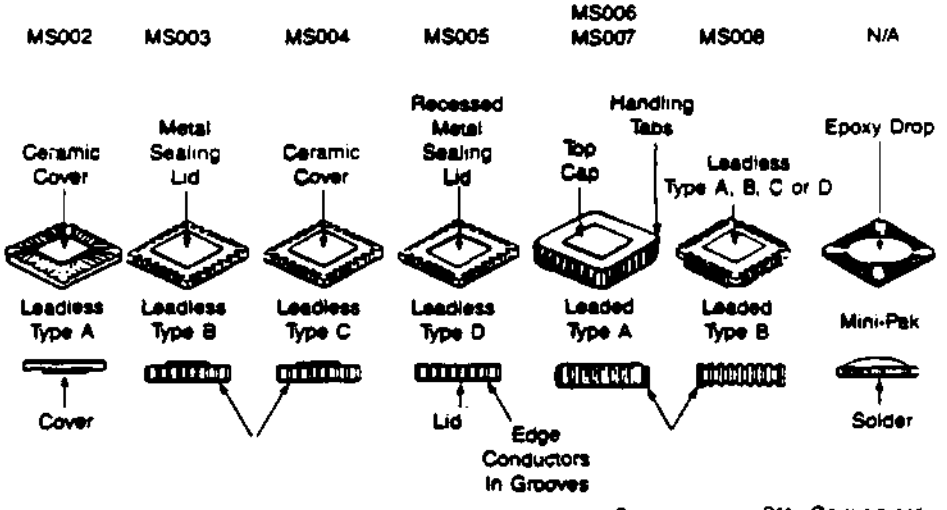
and may be made of ceramic or plastic. They are surface-mounted packages designed for mounting to a substrate, for socket insertion, and for through-hole mounting applications. Figure 11 shows the JEDEC chip carrier types and specifies some of their construction characteristics and mounting criteria. The JEDEC-labeled chip carriers are types A, B, C, and D and are leaded or leadless packages. DATAQUEST expects that the ceramic chip carriers will become the major packages for military and specific telecommunications applications, while the leaded plastic and leaded ceramic chip carriers will be the dominant carrier packages in all other applications. The advantages of chip carrier packages include:

- Size and weight
  - Volume--Potentially a 16:1 reduction over the DIP
  - Weight--Potentially a 12:1 reduction over the DIP
  - System PCB count 8:1 reduction over the DIP
- Reliability and rework
  - Low mass of chip carriers improves mechanical shock and vibration resistance.
  - Increased density allows reduction in plated through-holes.
- Parametric
  - Resistance and capacitance reduced by 55 percent
- Improvements
  - Average inductance reduced by 90 percent
  - PCB resistance
  - Improved switching times
- Potential cost reductions
  - Automated assembly
  - Smaller assembly line
  - Yield improvement
  - Easy rework

Packaging

Figure 11

JEDEC-RECOGNIZED CHIP CARRIER TYPES



Source: 3M Company

Leadless Ceramic Chip Carrier

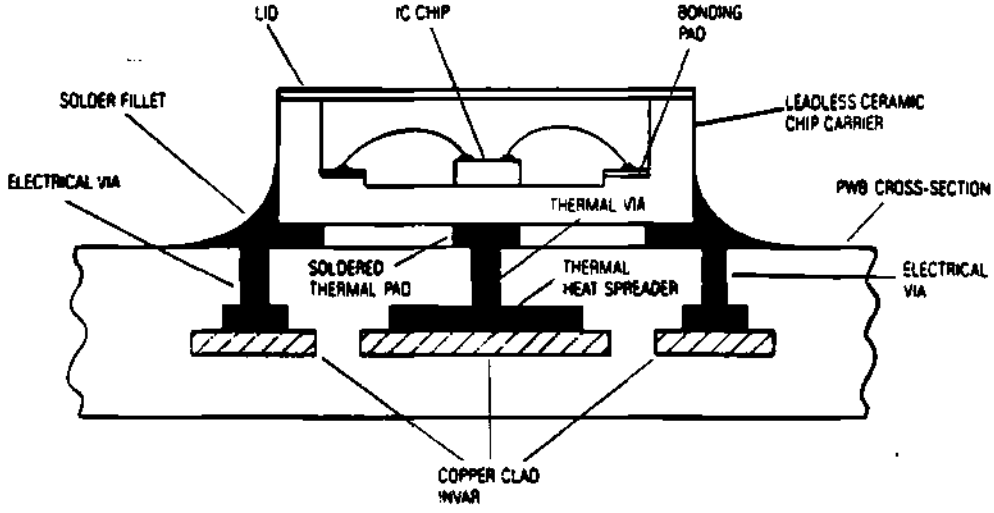
The leadless ceramic chip carrier (LCCC) is a symmetrical package with metallized leads extending from the die-attach cavity to the periphery of the substrate, down the edges, and slightly around the underside. Users should be aware of these three main obstacles to mounting LCCCs:

- Thermal management of the assembly to handle the increased packing density
- Solder-joint fatigue and failure due to the thermal coefficient of expansion (TCE) difference between the chip carrier and the printed circuit board
- Solder-joint failure due to flexing, warping, and twisting during processing, system assembly, and operation

The Metallurgical Materials Division of Texas Instruments has developed a multilayer epoxy glass board with copper-Invar-copper substrates to hold the solder-mounted chip carriers. Company packaging managers have concluded that the advantages of this copper-clad metal system include rigidity, improved dimensional stability, inherent heat sinking, TCE matching, integral ground and/or power plane, EMI/RFI shielding, and large area availability. Figure 12 is an illustration of how vias are used to conduct heat from high-power components to the core for improved thermal control.

Figure 12

THROUGH CONDUCTIVITY USING VIAS



Source: Texas Instruments

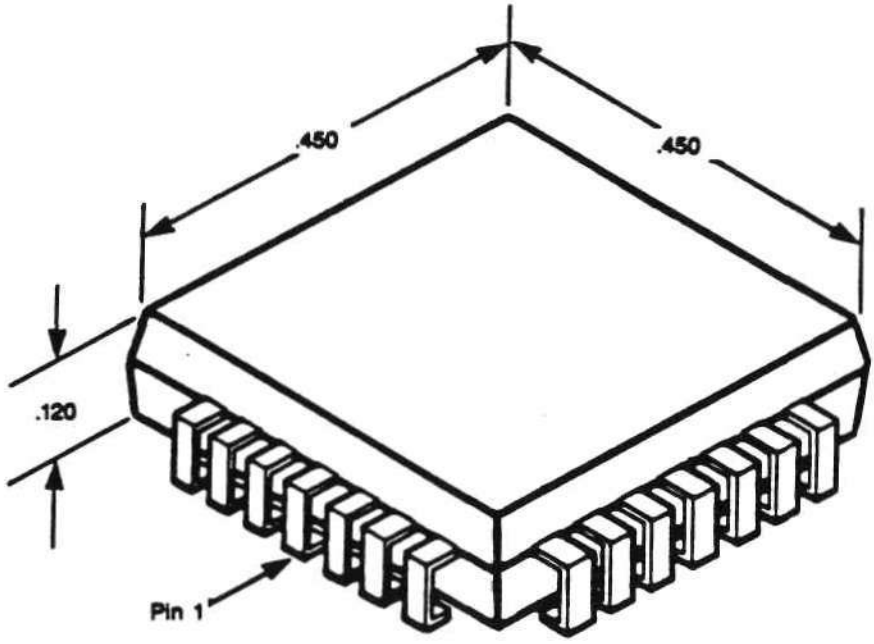
Leaded Ceramic Chip Carriers

The leaded chip carriers, also referred to as Type C by JEDEC, include the Quad Surface Mount, the Plastic Chip Carrier (PCC), and the Leaded Chip Carrier (LCC). The "J" leads of the leaded ceramic chip carrier allow it to be used with epoxy circuit boards, without installing sockets. The most common assembly method is to attach clips to the metallized carrier edges. The clips can be seen in Figure 13. Depending on the choice of bend, the carrier can be mounted to the circuit board with either surface mounting or through-hole mounting techniques. The LCC offers the handling and board mounting advantages of the PCC with the reliability characteristics of ceramic for military applications.

Packaging

Figure 13

LEADED CERAMIC CHIP CARRIER

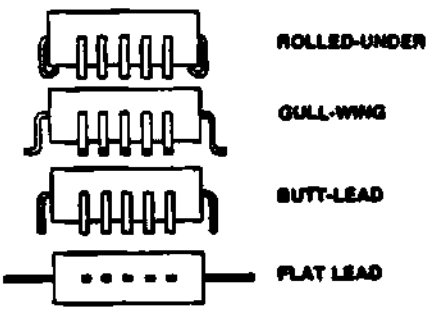


Source: DATAQUEST
March 1986

PCCs are primarily intended for surface-mount applications. Figure 14 illustrates the lead configurations for the PCC. The "J" form or rolled-under configuration is the JEDEC preferred version, since it displays the same footprint as the LCCC and takes up the smallest amount of board space. The problem of TCE differential between the printed circuit board and the device does not occur because the leads are designed to absorb thermally induced stress.

Figure 14

PCC LEAD CONFIGURATIONS



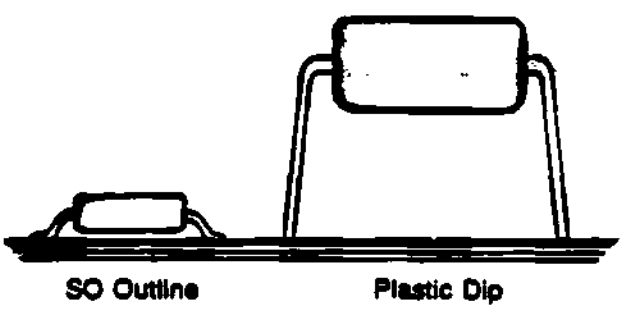
Source: National Semiconductor Corporation

Small-Outline Integrated Circuits (SOICs)

The small-outline (SO) package is basically a DIP configuration with leads on 0.050-inch centers. As shown in Figure 15, its leads are bent down and out from the body of the package for surface mounting. The SO occupies approximately one-fourth of the circuit board area required by the DIP, and it has the lowest profile of any of the packages in use. Its construction is essentially identical to that of the plastic DIP. Because it uses the same lead frame material and thickness as the plastic DIP and has very short leads, it is extremely rugged. Companies are developing wider-bodied (above 155 mils) packages in 18-, 20- and 28-pin counts.

Figure 15

SMALL-OUTLINE VERSUS PLASTIC DIP



Source: Signetics Corporation

Packaging

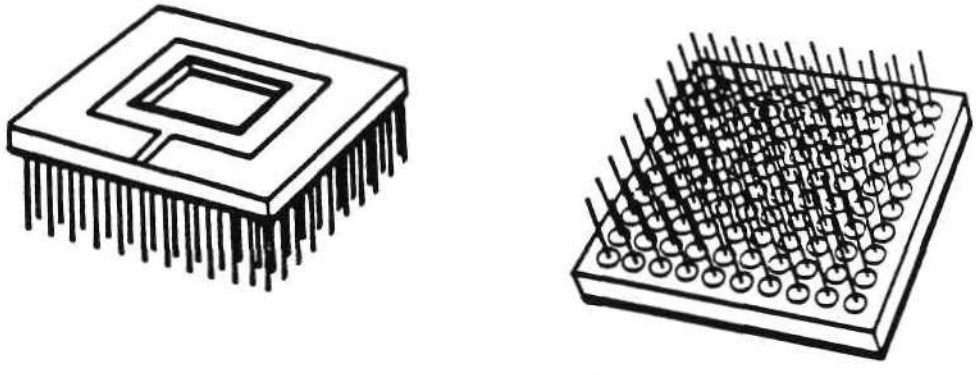
The SO package is popular in the hybrid industry because it facilitates testing and handling while offering small size. It is experiencing significant demand from the electronic camera, automotive, and telecommunications industries. It is especially popular for the packaging of analog ICs.

Pin Grid Arrays

The pin grid array (PGA) shown in Figure 16 is square in shape, with an array of pin locations on the underside of the package for through-board or socket mounting. The grid has a 0.100-inch row spacing. The PGA is available in cavity-up or cavity-down versions. The cavity-up version, as shown, eliminates the pins from the center of the substrate to make room for the die-attachment cavity. This cavity orientation places the die substrate in contact with the upper surface of the package and with any heat sinks that may be attached. The cavity-up configuration allows for a very high lead density but also cumbersome bonding operations. A cavity-down package has the chip cavity on the same side of the substrate as the pin grid.

Figure 16

PIN GRID ARRAY PACKAGE



Source: Electronic Products
3M Company

Packaging

We expect that the pin grid array will be the preferred package for I/O counts over 100. PGA components with as many as 1,000 pins have been successfully designed and fabricated. An 1,800-pin PGA has currently been designed by IBM. The PGA is even more compact than the chip carrier and does not have the thermal expansion problems often associated with chip carriers. Other advantages include:

- Insertion assembly methods comparable to the DIP
- Configurations that can accommodate a large number of pins
- More space efficiency

The disadvantages to PGA include:

- High cost of assembly
- Difficulty in rework if soldered to a printed circuit board
- Significant circuit board layout problems due to dense array of pins

Pad Grid Arrays

The pad grid array is a surface-mounted package that offers the packaging density advantages of the PGA, while less expensive. Pad grid arrays have also been used as alternate component packages to leadless chip carriers in socket applications, and they can be designed in cavity-up or cavity-down versions. In the pad grid array package, soldering pads are substituted for the mounting pins. While this surface-mount attachment of pads instead of pins is less expensive than the PGA, this attachment prevents visual inspection of the soldered connections, thus requiring stringent process controls during the initial soldering phase. Although the pad grid array is available from a few manufacturers, it does not represent a significant percent of the package industry.

Bare Chip Assembly

Chip-On-Board

Chip-on-board (COB) technology encompasses bare die attachment directly to the printed circuit board. The die is attached to the board with an adhesive epoxy and wire bonded directly to the surrounding

PCB traces. After bonding, the assembly is encapsulated with a plastic compound and cured to provide a degree of mechanical protection. The main advantages to COB include:

- Size reduction and space savings by eliminating the package
- Reduced packaging costs
- Automated assembly

Although COB reliability has been improved with developments of epoxy materials used during encapsulation, its nonhermetic seal and difficulty in rework have limited its areas of application. The success of COB, therefore, requires the use of a quality-tested die. COB is widely used in low-end, consumer-oriented products where the equipment operates in a benign environment requiring low levels of protection. These products include:

- Digital watch modules
- Calculators
- Video game cartridges
- Electronic toys
- Audio equipment
- Smart cards

More recently, major manufacturers have incorporated COB with chip-and-wire technology to achieve the cost-saving advantages of COB while making use of all interconnections between the printed circuit board and die. Hewlett-Packard has employed the COB and chip-and-wire technique in a computer board application using a gold-plated dielectric multilayer board and its proprietary Thinstrate technology.

Tape Automated Bonding

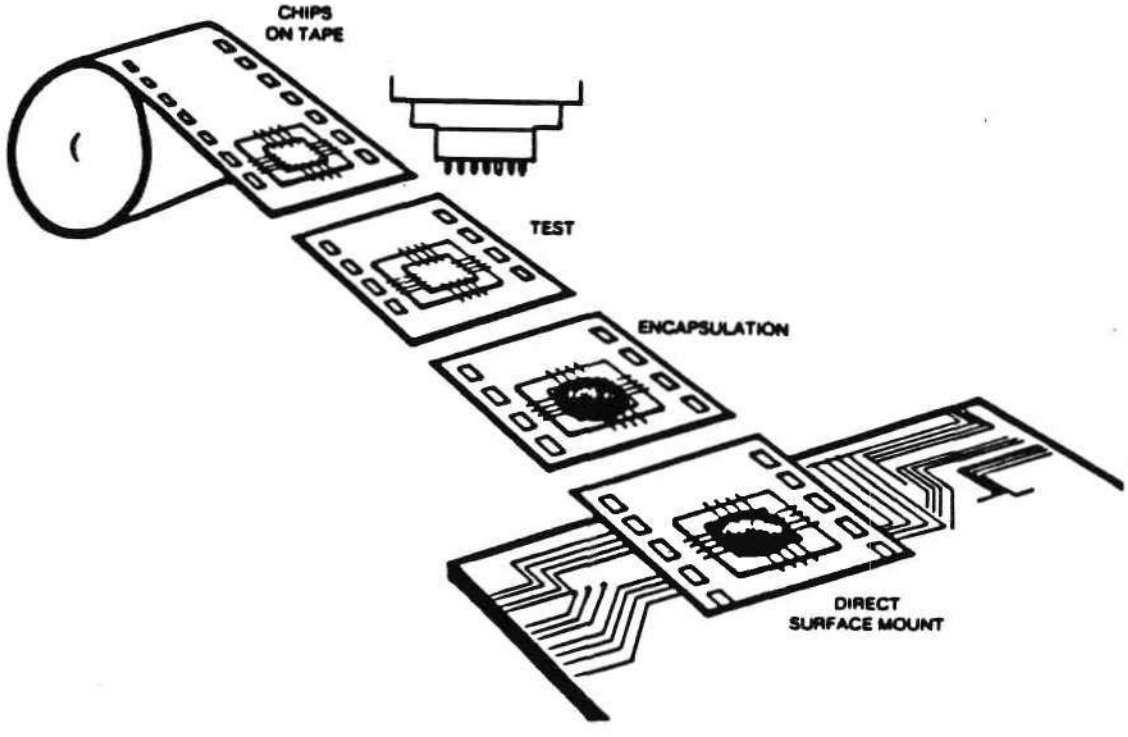
Tape automated bonding (TAB) is an assembly technique, as shown in Figure 17, whereby leads are etched on single or multilayer polymetric tape. The basic beam-tape assembly consists of a stable plastic (polymide or Kapton) laminated to the copper foil layer. Beams or patterns are etched into the copper layer; the beams then make the connection between the die and lead frame or printed circuit board. The tape and attached chips can be assembled on reels like photographic film,

or tested and assembled as separate frames. The tape and chips can be enclosed in plastic or attached directly to a lead frame or printed circuit board and encapsulated. Assembly costs are reduced as TAB eliminates the use of bond wire, lead frame, die attach, and molding compounds. The major advantages and driving forces behind TAB acceptance include the following:

- TAB offers improved component reliability.
- TAB offers more space efficiency and increased functional density over traditional wire-bond or surface-mount techniques.
- TAB lends itself to full in-line automation.
- TAB offers hermetically sealed bonding areas.
- TAB offers significant cost reductions.

Figure 17

SURFACE MOUNTING WITH TAB



Source: MESA Technology

Packaging

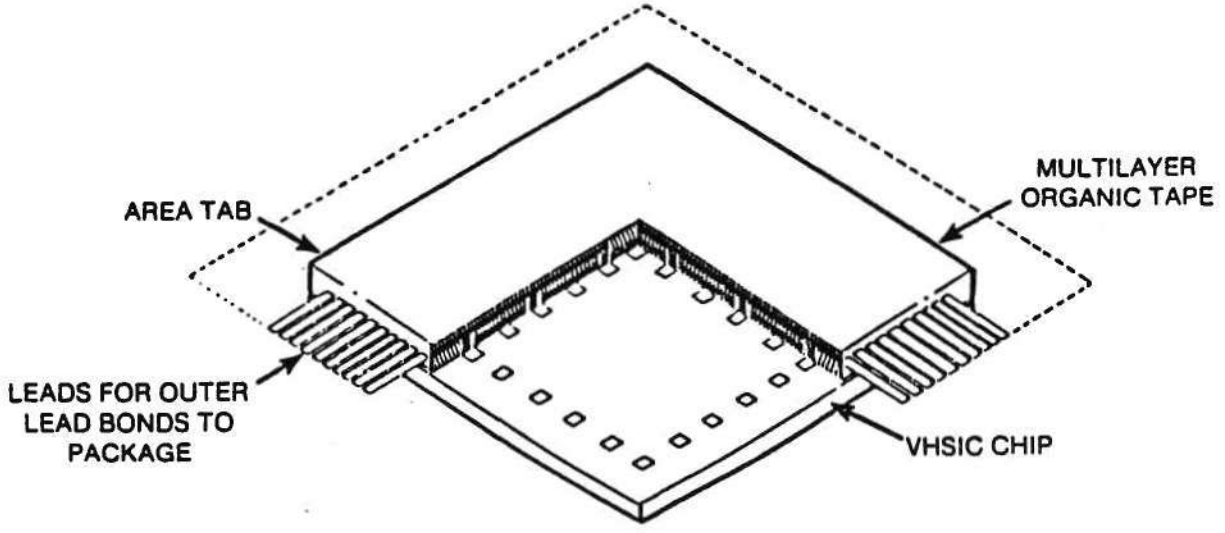
TAB has significant promise as a packaging technology for VLSI/VHSIC systems, as shown in Figure 18. Westinghouse is developing a polymide-supported TAB lead frame for implementation in VHSIC devices. IBM and Honeywell are also offering TAB in either perimeter configurations or single layer area array formats in their VHSIC package developments. Honeywell is solder bumping the TAB chips to the lead frame. Martin Marietta has developed 264-I/O-pin leaded and leadless chip carriers on 20-mil centers with the carrier's chip cavity designed for TAB. National Semiconductor utilizes a TAB process called TAPE-PAK, whereby the tape is connected to copper bumps by means of a copper-to-copper thermocompression bond. National Semiconductor and Fairchild use beam-tape for SSI/MSI integrated package assembly. Major R&D using TAB for VLSI designs is being undertaken by Microelectronics and Computer Technology Center, Austin, Texas. TAB is also being used extensively in Japanese consumer products.

The emerging markets for TAB include:

- Smart cards
  - Banking
  - Credit
  - Dog tags
  - Drivers licenses
- Watches
- Cameras
- Computers
- Display drivers
- Automotive
  - Radio
- Calculators
- Cellular telephones
- Hearing aids
- Tracking systems
- MPUs
- Gate arrays
- VHSIC devices

Figure 18

VHSIC CHIP IN A TAPE BONDING SYSTEM



Source: RADC

Packaging

Flip Chip

The flip chip assembly process was developed by IBM in the 1960s and is referred to as the "controlled-collapse" technique. The flip chip is basically a chip designed for facedown reflow soldering, as opposed to chip-and-wire devices, which require faceup wire bonding. The contact areas are prepared on the front or active side of the chip. Solder bumps for reflow connections are formed on the chips while in wafer form. The chip is then passivated with silicon nitride or quartz and made hermetic by the solder ball in the contact openings. Testing is accomplished through the solder bumps. After testing, the dice are placed in "flip" orientation (upside down) on the substrate and then the assembly is heated in a furnace to melt the solder. The surface tension of the solder aligns the dice properly to the substrate; the alignment is retained as the circuit cools.

Although the flip chip assembly process is critical, as it must be carefully controlled in circuits to assure high quality and reliability, the flip chip technology offers many cost-saving advantages such as:

- Lower assembly costs using solder bumps instead of wire bonding
- Reduced labor and material costs as wire bonding is eliminated
- Improved yields through automated assembly
- Cost reductions realized through lower capital equipment requirements

Currently, the major users of the flip chip technique are Delco and IBM.

Packaging

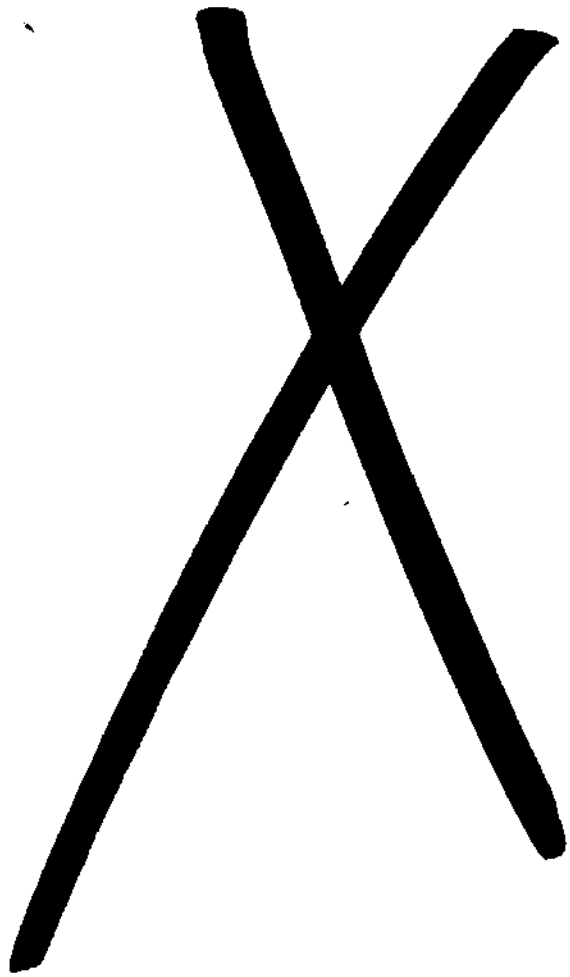
Flip Chip

The flip chip assembly process was developed by IBM in the 1960s and is referred to as the "controlled-collapse" technique. The flip chip is basically a chip designed for facedown reflow soldering, as opposed to chip-and-wire devices, which require faceup wire bonding. The contact areas are prepared on the front or active side of the chip. Solder bumps for reflow connections are formed on the chips while in wafer form. The chip is then passivated with silicon nitride or quartz and made hermetic by the solder ball in the contact openings. Testing is accomplished through the solder bumps. After testing, the dice are placed in "flip" orientation (upside down) on the substrate and then the assembly is heated in a furnace to melt the solder. The surface tension of the solder aligns the dice properly to the substrate; the alignment is retained as the circuit cools.

Although the flip chip assembly process is critical, as it must be carefully controlled in circuits to assure high quality and reliability, the flip chip technology offers many cost-saving advantages such as:

- Lower assembly costs using solder bumps instead of wire bonding
- Reduced labor and material costs as wire bonding is eliminated
- Improved yields through automated assembly
- Cost reductions realized through lower capital equipment requirements

Currently, the major users of the flip chip technique are Delco and IBM.



European Semiconductor Manufacturing

OVERVIEW

The European market for semiconductors amounted to an estimated $4.6 billion in 1985, approximately 19 percent of total worldwide consumption. About 20 percent of this market was for discrete devices, which is down from their disproportionately high percentage of 26 percent only two years ago in 1983.

In Europe, semiconductor manufacturing is performed both by European and U.S. companies. The U.S. companies have traditionally supplied 40 to 50 percent of this market. Unlike in the United States, few companies in Europe focus only on semiconductor manufacturing. Most large semiconductor manufacturers in Europe are divisions of large, industrial electronic systems manufacturers.

Recent Decline in Worldwide Share

Over the past several years, the European semiconductor market has declined in dollar terms as a percent of total world semiconductor consumption. In 1979, European consumption represented 27 percent of the worldwide market; in 1985, European consumption represented only 19 percent.

In 1978, three European companies ranked among the top 15 worldwide semiconductor manufacturers--by 1985, only one remained in the top 15. In the key new product area of MOS integrated circuits, the European companies' 1985 share was approximately 4.7 percent.

Part of this decline was due to the fall of the European currencies vis-a-vis the U.S. dollar, but there were also other problems. Because of a narrow market base, a lack of international product strategy, and a lack of competitiveness, European semiconductor companies failed to keep pace with product and manufacturing advances.

In many instances, the European semiconductor companies are able to compete against their larger and more cost-effective U.S.-owned competitors only because of subsidies granted by their respective national governments.

European Semiconductor Manufacturing

Historically, most European semiconductor companies have not fully developed their international manufacturing and marketing capabilities. This lack of international reach, together with the greater market strength and advanced technology of U.S. manufacturers, has contributed to the weakened competitive condition of many European companies. However, there are exceptions to this rule. Phillips, Siemens, and now Thomson, through its acquisition of Mostek, have attained strong international positions.

Revitalization and Growth of the European Industry

There are encouraging signs that the European semiconductor industry is beginning to overcome some of the bonds that have restricted its market share. Of the total semiconductor production in 1985 ($24,542 million), European companies accounted for approximately 12 percent ($2,850 million). This was the first time in 10 years that European companies gained market share and represents a beginning of a payback on their commitment to capital and R&D investments. By 1990, the European companies' market share could be as high as 15 percent.

Although historically there have been few start-ups in Europe, this is changing. Though not as prolific as in the United States, these European start-ups are showing significant activity, which Dataquest believes represents a fundamental change in the European industry. Integrated Power Semiconductor, Matra-Harris, and Mietec have already made substantial progress in their respective fields, and a new venture, European Silicon Structures (ESS), was launched recently.

Some European companies have recognized their lack of international reach and have created strategic alliances to remedy this shortcoming. For example, the Phillips-Siemens mega-project will result in Europe having a state-of-the-art process capable of building 4-megabit DRAMs and 1-megabit SRAMs. In addition, Thomson in France and MEDL in the United Kingdom have announced a development project to cooperate on ASICs. Similar agreements exist between Thomson and Oki, SGS and Toshiba, and Phillips and Texas Instruments.

European companies are determined to be major players in the worldwide semiconductor industry. In addition to managerial talent, European companies also have impressive R&D and financial capabilities. Most importantly, European electronics companies and their governments are committed to having a world-class electronics industry.

European Semiconductor Manufacturing

CAPITAL SPENDING

In 1985, European companies invested $381 million in new semiconductor equipment, while North America invested $2,211 million and Japan invested $3,346 million. Dataquest estimates that the 1986 numbers will be $430 million, $2,193 million, and $2,980 million, respectively. Furthermore, we believe that as a percent of revenue, European investment will remain below that of both North America and Japan (see Table 1).

Table 1

ESTIMATED CAPITAL VS. REVENUE: NORTH AMERICA, JAPAN, AND EUROPE
1985-1990
(Millions of Dollars)

	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989	1990
North American Revenue	$11,272	$14,209	$18,329	$22,518	$22,622	$26,584
Capital Spending	$ 2,211	$ 2,193	$ 3,569	$ 4,579	$ 4,528	$ 5,410
Capital/Revenue	20%	15%	19%	20%	20%	20%
Japanese Revenue	$10,185	$11,600	$15,494	$20,291	$21,962	$26,584
Capital Spending	$ 3,346	$ 2,980	$ 3,905	$ 4,495	$ 4,679	$ 5,509
Capital/Revenue	33%	26%	25%	22%	21%	21%
European Revenue	$ 2,301	$ 2,732	$ 3,780	$ 5,031	$ 5,398	$ 6,573
Capital Spending	$ 381	$ 430	$ 589	$ 817	$ 950	$ 1,119
Capital/Revenue	17%	16%	16%	16%	18%	17%

Source: Dataquest
May 1986

R&D ACTIVITIES

In addition to individual company efforts, European R&D advances are being lead by both government initiatives, and by joint, private initiatives.

European Semiconductor Manufacturing

Governmental Initiatives

The competitive weakness of the European semiconductor industry has not been helped by the attention European governments have traditionally given the politically more powerful industries. For example, the European Economic Community (EEC) spends much more on farming than on semiconductor technology, despite enormous agricultural stockpiles.

Fears of creating unemployment are also very acute in Europe. Unemployment is now in the area of 11 percent and is expected to remain high throughout the 1980s. Many Europeans look only at job displacement and not at job creation and fear that increased emphasis on high technology will increase the unemployment rate.

In spite of the difficulties encountered in funding high-technology enterprises, the European community recognizes the importance of technological growth and is now moving toward the deliberate cultivation of high technology. For example, in early 1984, the EEC approved ESPRIT (European Strategic Program for Research and Development in Information Technology), a $1.3 billion electronics R&D program in five research categories: advanced microelectronics, software technology, advanced information processing, office automation and computer integrated manufacturing, and information exchange systems.

Private Initiatives

Twelve leading European-owned computer and communications manufacturers have agreed to start using international standards that are designed to enable their products to be interconnected.

A European venture capital initiative called Euroventures BV was undertaken in mid-1984. The subscription goal is $100 million, of which $30 million is already committed. Euroventures will make investments through several independently managed satellite funds. Its overall goal is to strengthen and develop Europe's industrial and technological base by creating less-fragmented markets.

THE EUROPEAN SEMICONDUCTOR MARKETPLACE

The use of semiconductor devices in Europe is heavily weighted toward industrial, telecommunications, and consumer uses (over 65 percent) with smaller markets for computer and military applications (29 percent).

European Semiconductor Manufacturing

Automotive

Although Europe lacks the incentives of strong antipollution requirements, Dataquest thinks that the drive for fuel conservation will cause above average growth in the automotive semiconductor market. Total semiconductor automotive sales were approximately $256 million in 1985, and we expect growth to $599 million in 1990, a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 19 percent. This is higher than the Dataquest consumption forecast of 16 percent CAGR over the same period for the European semiconductor market as a whole.

Computer

U.S. companies such as Burroughs, Digital Equipment Corporation, Honeywell, and IBM traditionally have dominated the European computer market. These companies all have extensive R&D, engineering, and manufacturing capabilities in Europe. Only Cii Honeywell Bull (France), ICL (the United Kingdom), and Siemens (West Germany) remain strong in the European mainframe computer market.

However, European companies are more active in the data processing area. Market participants include: Cii Honeywell Bull (France), GEC (the United Kingdom), ICL (the United Kingdom), Kienzle (West Germany), Matra (France), Nixdorf (West Germany), Olivetti (Italy), Olympia (West Germany), Phillips (the Netherlands), Siemens (West Germany), Thomson (France), and Triumph-Adler (West Germany).

Although the emerging business personal computer area is currently dominated by Apple and IBM, there has been emerging strength exhibited by ACT (the United Kingdom), Olivetti (Italy), Siemens (West Germany), and Thomson (France).

Dataquest forecasts that European electronic data processing semiconductor consumption will increase from $256 million in 1985 to $599 million in 1990, demonstrating a 17 percent CAGR.

Consumer

Led by the television manufacturers and supported by makers of audio equipment and domestic kitchen appliances, Europe has always been strong in the consumer market. More recently, Europe has developed a strong home computer manufacturing industry, particularly in the United Kingdom, led by manufacturers such as Acorn, Amstrad, Oric, and Sinclair (Sinclair was recently purchased by Amstead).

These markets, however, remain vulnerable to Far Eastern imports. Dataquest therefore expects a below average growth in consumer end-user semiconductor consumption (15 percent CAGR) and estimates that this segment will grow from $906 million in 1985 to $1,782 million in 1990.

Military

This segment accounted for approximately 10 percent of the total 1985 European semiconductor consumption. Dataquest forecasts that total European government and military semiconductor consumption will increase from $449 million in 1985 to $910 million in 1990, a 15 percent CAGR.

Industrial

The industrial end-user category represented 22 percent of the total 1985 European semiconductor consumption. Industrial semiconductors are used in areas such as: image recognition systems, robotics, office automation, automatic test equipment, and advanced machine tools. Dataquest expects industrial end users to remain a major market area, and forecasts growth from $1,035 million in 1985 to $2,219 in 1990, a 16 percent CAGR.

Telecommunications

The European telecommunications semiconductor market is the world leader, representing 25 percent of the total European semiconductor market in 1985. The advent of cost-competitive CMOS and power devices, with all their benefits of low-power consumption and supply tolerance, has enabled European companies to gain a strong place in the telecommunications end-equipment markets.

Many worldwide semiconductor producers are developing and producing high-volume dedicated semiconductors for telecommunications use. Dataquest expects the European telecommunications market for semiconductors to grow at a 17 percent CAGR between 1985 and 1990.

SERVICES AND SUPPLIERS TO THE SEMICONDUCTOR INDUSTRY

Semiconductor capital equipment is primarily supplied by U.S.-owned companies. Although Canon, Hoya, and Nikon are active in the European market, overall there is a low level of participation by Japanese companies. Dataquest believes that the low level of Japanese participation in the European market is due to the absence of a European-based sales and service support organization. Japanese firms typically want such support in place before making substantial product offerings.

Assembly

Because high-volume assembly is still best carried out in the low labor cost areas, there are as yet no major independent assembly services developed in Europe.

Although there are some advantages (shorter product pipelines and fast turnaround time) in having both wafer fabrication facilities and assembly lines in Europe, most manufacturers install only pilot assembly lines.

However, the trend toward assembly automation and the present 14 percent import duty on semiconductor devices assembled outside of Europe are incentives for assembly to remain in the EEC. These incentives have caused NEC, Hitachi, and Toshiba to build highly automated assembly lines in Europe, particularly in the high-volume memory and microprocessor areas.

Dataquest believes that with packages becoming more complex and more diverse and with the increasing growth in application-specific integrated circuits (ASICs), especially in the low-volume end of the market, opportunities for European-based assembly facilities will become more viable.

Capital Equipment

The European capital equipment industry is typified by a high degree of fragmentation, with different companies specializing in different aspects of the market.

The European capital equipment market is dominated by U.S.- and Japanese-owned companies. This is because of the relatively small European-owned semiconductor manufacturing base, and because the U.S.- and Japanese-owned companies with manufacturing facilities in Europe tend to equip those facilities with the same equipment as they use in their domestic operations. European companies that are major worldwide market participants include: A.S.M. in CVD; Balzars in physical vapor deposition; Censor in lithography (now a part of Perkin-Elmer); E.T. Associates (Electrotech) in planar etch; Leybold-Hereaus in physical vapor deposition; Karl Suss in x-ray alignment; and Carl Zeiss, which makes some of the most advanced lenses in the world.

Materials

The materials market is similar to the capital equipment market in that no major company manufactures the whole range of products. Bulk gases, photomasks, silicon wafers, photoresist, and specialty gases have at least one major European supplier.

European strength in the area of gases is based on the fact that some gases are consumed in such vast quantities that is it necessary to produce them locally. In both masks and silicon, the high level of European-based wafer manufacture has created enough market leverage to justify European production. The relative decline of the European currencies since 1981 has given the European wafer manufacturers a considerable cost advantage over the other suppliers. Another factor contributing to the growth of the indigenous European mask-making industry is the ever-increasing need to reduce the time taken from design completion to first silicon, which is especially important for ASICs.

The major European-based suppliers of silicon wafers include Wacker-Chemie (West Germany), Topsil Semiconductor Materials (Denmark), and Dynamit Nobel Silicon (Italy). The major European-based suppliers of III-V materials include Wacker-Chemie (West Germany); ICI Wafer Technology (Imperial Chemical Industries) and MCP, Ltd., (both of the United Kingdom); and Boliden Finemet (Sweden).

BOC (British Oxygen Company, the United Kingdom), L'Air Liquide (France), and Linde A.G. (West Germany) are the major European-based suppliers both in specialty and bulk gases. Another major supplier of specialty gases in Europe is Messer Griesheim (West Germany).

The major European-based suppliers of photoresist products include Hoechst AG (West Germany), E. Merck (West Germany), and Micro-Image Technology (the United Kingdom). Merck and Hoechst are also major suppliers of process wet chemicals for semiconductor fabrication.

Nanomask (France); Compugraphics (Scotland); IC mask, a joint-venture of TRE and ICI (England); CSEM (Switzerland); and SAC, a newcomer from England, are the major European-based suppliers of photomasks.

Testing

Currently, there is no major market for independent semiconductor testing houses in Europe.

Due to the high capital cost of modern complex VLSI test equipment, Dataquest does not foresee much growth potential in the testing area, except perhaps as an integral part of an independent ASIC assembly facility.

SEMICONDUCTOR FAB DISTRIBUTION

Semiconductors are fabricated in 91 separate facilities in 17 different European countries. (See Table 2 for a listing of the individual companies, locations, products, and technologies). England has 22 fabs located on its soil as listed in Table 3, or approximately 24 percent of the total in all of Europe. The United Kingdom has 35 fabs within it, or approximately 38 percent of the European total. France has 16 fabs on its soil, or approximately 18 percent, and West Germany has 13 fabs, or approximately 14 percent of the total number of fabs in Europe (see Figure 1). England, France, and West Germany have a total of 51 fabs between them, or 56 percent of the total number of fabs in Europe.

Table 2

EUROPEAN FABS

Company	City	Country	Product	Technology
Acrian	Bridgend	Wales	Microwave	BIP
Analog Devices	Raheen	Eire	Digital, Linear, BPD	MOS
Ansaldo	Genoa	Italy	Discretes	DIS
Array Logic	Cambridge	England	Semicustom	N/A
Asea Hafo	Jarfalla	Sweden	Memory, Discretes, LSI	BIP, LIN, MOS
Austria Microsystems	Unterpremstattn	Austria	Custom LSI	N/A
Brown Boveri	Turgi	Switzerland	Discretes	LIN
Burr Brown	Livingston	Scotland	Custom	CMOS, BIP, LIN
EE2	Aix-En-Provence	France	Semicustom	N/A
Fairchild	Saint Etienne	France	LSI	MOS
Faselec	Zurich	Switzerland	Custom LSI	BIP, DIS, OPT
Favag	Bevaix	Switzerland	Custom LSI	N/A
Ferranti	Oldham	England	Digital, Custom LSI	BIP, MOS, DIS
General Instruments	Glenrothes	Scotland	Memory	MOS, CMOS
HMT	Brugg	Switzerland	TV, Game and Telecom	MOS
Hughes Microelec	Glenrothes	Scotland	LSI	MOS, LIN
IBM	Corbell-Essones	France	Diodes	BIP
IBM	Hannover	West Germany	Thyristors, Diodes, Rectifiers	DIS
IBM	Sindelfingen	West Germany	4 facilities	MOS, BIP
IBM	Boeblingen	West Germany	IC, Hybrid, Pwr. Discretes	BIP, DIS
Inmos	Newport	Wales	LSI	MOS
Integrated Power Semiconductor	Livingston	Scotland	Linear	LIN
Intel	Tel Aviv	Israel	LSI	MOS
Int'l. Rectifier	Borgarp Torinea	Italy	DIS	DIS
Iskra	Trbovlje	Yugoslavia	Digital, Discretes	BIP, DIS
Isocom	Hartlepool	England	Opto	GaAs
ITT	Freiburg	West Germany	Digital, Rectifier Pwr. Trans., LSI	BIP, DIS, MOS
LSI Logic	Braunschweig	West Germany	LSI	MOS
Lucas	Sutton Coldfld	England	GaAs, Pwr. Discretes, Thyristors, Rectifiers	GaAs, DIS
Marconi Electronic	Lincoln	England	Discretes, MOS, LSI, Microwave	DIS, MOS
Marconi Electronic	Wembley	England	LSI	DIS, MOS
Marconi Research Center	Chelmsford	England	N/A	GaAs

(Continued)

Table 2 (Continued)

EUROPEAN FABS

Company	City	Country	Product	Technology
Matra-Harris	Nantes	France	SRAM, Gate Arrays	DIS, MOS
Microelectronic-Marin	Marin	Sweden	Custom LSI	N/A
Mietec	Oudenaarde	Belgium	ASICs	CMOS, HVMOS, BIMOS
Mistral	Sermoneta	Italy	Discretes	DIS
Mitel	Caldicot	Wales	Custom ICs	BIP, LIN, OPT
Motorola	Toulouse	France	Digital, Discretes, Linear	BIP, DIS, LIN
Motorola	East Kilbride	Scotland	GaAs FET Amps, LEDs, Microwave	GaAs
Motorola	East Kilbride	Scotland	256K and 64K RAM	MOS
Mullard	Southampton	England	Digital, LSI	BIP, MOS
Mullard	Stockport	England	Discretes	DIS
National Semiconductor	Greenock	Scotland	Digital, Linear, LSI	BIP, LIN, MOS
NEC	Livingston	Scotland	LSI	MOS
Nowmarket Microsystems	Nowmarket	England	Linear, Discretes	LIN, DIS
Philips	Eindhoven	Netherlands	Discretes, Linear, LSI, Opto	BIP, DIS, MOS
Philips	Nijmegen	Netherlands	Discretes, Linear	BIP, DIS, LIN
Philips	Stadskanaal	Netherlands	GaAs, Custom	GaAs, OPTO, MOS
Philips	Zurich	Switzerland	Digital, Linear, LSI	BIP, LIN, MOS
Philips	Hamburg	West Germany	Analog, Discretes, MOS	BIP, DIS, MOS
Piher	Granollers	Spain	Digital, Discretes, Linear	BIP, DIS, LIN
Plessey	Caswell	England	Discretes, Opto, LSI	DIS, OPTO, MOS
Plessey	Plympton	England	LSI	MOS
Plessey	Swindon	England	Digital, Diodes	BIP, LIN
Plessey III-IV Group	Towchester	England	N/A	GaAs
Plessey	Roborough	England	Analog	BIP, DISC, LIN
Racal	Reading	England	LSI	MOS
Rifa	Kalmar	Sweden	Power Capacitors	DIS
Rifa	Kista	Sweden	Digital, LSI	BIP, MOS
Robert Bosch	Reutlingen	West Germany	Custom LSI	BIP, MOS, DIS, LIN
RTC	Caen	France	Discrete, Linear, LSI, Opt.	BIP, DIS, MOS
Semelab	Glenrothes	England	Digital	BIP, DISC, LIN
Semikron	Cricklade	England	Discretes	DIS
Semikron	Nurnberg	West Germany	Discretes	DIS
SGS	Rennes	France	Discretes, Linear, Custom LSI	DIS, LIN, MOS
SGS	Agrate	Italy	LSI, Linear	MOS, LIN
SGS	Catania	Italy	Digital, Std. Logic	BIP, DIS, LIN
Siemens	Villach	Austria	64K DRAM, Discretes	MOS, DIS
Siemens	Cricklade	England	Discretes	DIS
Siemens	Munich	West Germany	BPO, Digital, LSI, Opto	BIP, DIS, MOS
Siliconix	Swansea	Wales	Discretes, LSI	DIS, MOS
Standard Electrica	Cascais	Portugal	Discretes	DIS
STC	Footscray	England	Custom LSI	MOS
Tag	Zurich	Switzerland	Discretes	DIS
Telefunken Electronic	Heilbronn	West Germany	Linear, Opto	BIP, MOS, DIS
Texas Instruments	Bedford	England	Discretes, LSI	DIS, MOS, OPTO
Texas Instruments	Villeneuve-Loub	France	Custom LSI, MOS LSI	MOS
Texas Instruments	Freising	West Germany	Digital, Linear	BIP, LIN
Texet	Nice	France	Discretes	DIS

(Continued)

Table 2 (Continued)

EUROPEAN FABS

Company	City	Country	Product	Technology
Thomson	Aix Les Bains	France	Gate Arrays	MOS
Thomson	Aix-En-Provence	France	Thyristors, LED, Diodes	DIS
Thomson	Grenoble	France	Memory, MPU	MOS
Thomson	Rousset	France	LSI, Memory, MPU	MOS
Thomson	Saint Egreve	France	Digital, Custom	BIP, LIN
Thomson	Tours	France	Discretes	DIS
Thomson CSF	Massy	France	N/A	GaAs
Valvo	Hamburg	West Germany	Digital, Discretes, MPU	BIP, CMOS, OPT
Vaisala	Helsinki	Finland	LSI, Std. Cells	MOS, CMOS
Westcode Semi.	Chippenham	England	Discretes	DIS
Wolfson Microelectronic	Edinburgh	Scotland	N/A	N/A

N/A = Not Available

Source: Dataquest
May 1986

Table 3

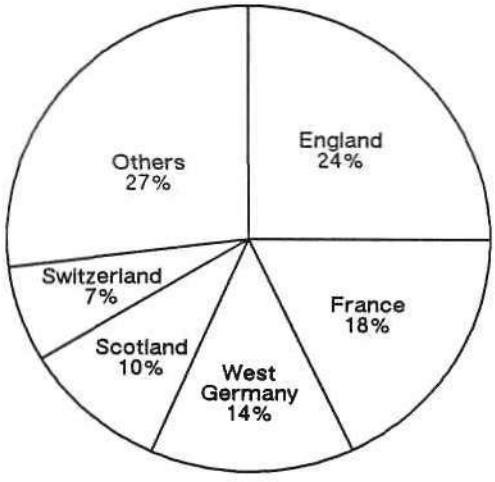
DISTRIBUTION OF EUROPEAN SEMICONDUCTOR FABS

Country	Fab Count
England	22
France	16
West Germany	13
Scotland	9
Switzerland	6
Italy	5
Wales	4
Sweden	4
Netherlands	3
Austria	2
Eire	1
Finland	1
Spain	1
Portugal	1
Israel	1
Belgium	1
Yugoslavia	1
Total	91

Source: Dataquest
May 1986

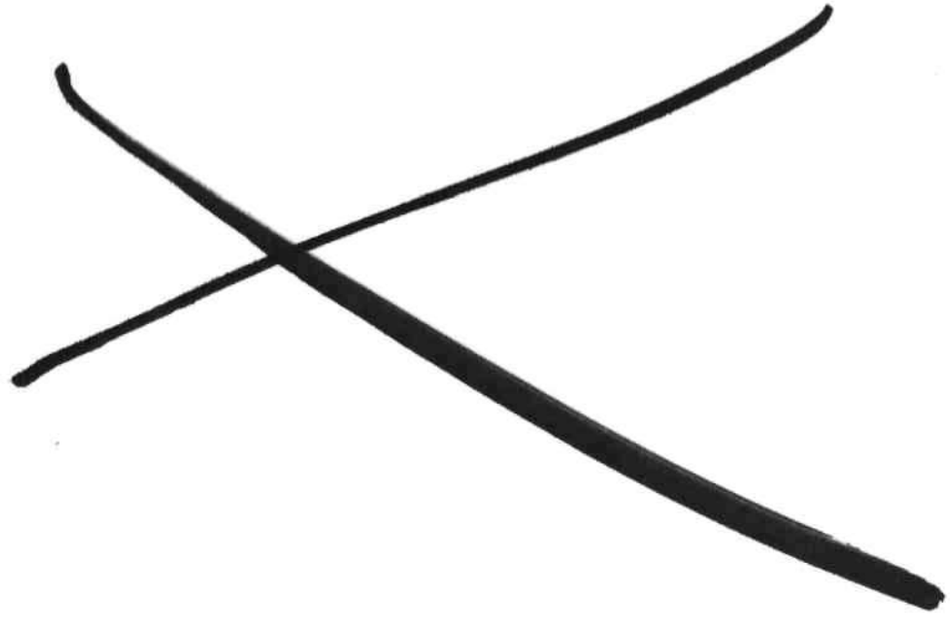
Figure 1

DISTRIBUTION OF EUROPEAN SEMICONDUCTOR FABS



Source: Dataquest
July 1986

Japanese S/C Mfg.



Japanese Semiconductor Manufacturing

ECONOMIC STRUCTURE OF JAPAN

Before discussing the Japanese market for semiconductor manufacturing equipment specifically, a brief overview of the major organizational features and trends of the Japanese economy is in order.

Industrial Groups

Japanese industry is organized into industrial groups. These industrial groups are clustered around the leading banks like Dai-Ichi Kangyo, Fuji, Mitsubishi, Mitsui, Sanwa, and Sumitomo. Today's industrial groups are different from the large, family-controlled trading blocks known as zaibatsu, which were formally dissolved after World War II. Industrial groups differ from the prewar zaibatsu in that councils of presidents (shacho-kai) have replaced the former holding companies.

Keiretsu Gaisho

A company in an industrial group is frequently the center of a keiretsu gaisho, which is a network of affiliated companies that are in turn affiliated with a large group of subcontractors.

The Ministry of International Trade and Industry (MITI)

The Ministry of International Trade and Industry (MITI) has evolved into the "general staff" for developing industrial policies (sangyo seisaku) and promoting foreign trade. MITI is responsible for assisting specific industries and guiding their expansion. It has done this by shielding Japanese manufacturers with import protectionist policies until they have attained a competitive high-volume base. Then MITI directly promotes exports through direct subsidies, tax incentives, and targeted R&D. It is the key ministry behind Japan's challenge in the semiconductor field.

Japanese R&D trends are heavily influenced by government sponsorship and funding of basic research projects. The Japanese government is currently pursuing a series of joint industry/government R&D programs aimed at accelerating the rate of Japan's technological innovations. The major sponsors of these programs are MITI and Nippon Telegraph and Telephone (NTT).

For example, in 1976, MITI and NTT formed the VLSI Technology Research Association, which consisted of both government agencies plus Fujitsu, Hitachi, Mitsubishi Electric, NEC, and Toshiba. The association's goal was to develop basic VLSI (very large scale

integration) technology and manufacturing techniques for use in computers. The following six areas were targeted for research and development:

- Microfabrication technology (electron-beam and X-ray) for submicron lithography
- Development of low-defect, large-diameter silicon wafer substrates
- Computer-aided design (CAD)
- LSI microfabrication process techniques and equipment
- VLSI evaluation and testing techniques and equipment
- Logic and memory devices using the above technologies

Current MITI projects include the following:

- The Fifth-Generation Computer Project
- An optoelectronic computer that will use light rather than electricity to transfer information
- The development of a supercomputer
- The Next-Generation Industries Project
- New Function Elements Project

Fifth-Generation Computer Project

Using artificial intelligence, the Fifth-Generation Computer Project hopes to achieve the following long-term goals:

- The development of computer translation systems in which up to 90 percent of foreign language translation would be automated and only the final editing and polishing done by humans (MITI hopes to achieve this at 30 percent of the cost of present translation methods.)
- The development of an interactive reference library for specialized fields such as medical diagnosis, CAD/CAM, geological exploration, etc.
- The development of nearly automatic software creation without the need for computer sophistication on the part of the user

Research is being pursued in problem-solving and inference systems, knowledge-based systems, intelligent human/machine interface systems, development support systems, and basic applications systems.

Optoelectronics

MITI hopes to develop a computer that will use light rather than electricity to transfer information. To achieve this goal, the Optical Measurement and Control System was formed in 1979 to develop optical elements for sensing devices (image processing) and data transmission.

Supercomputer

By 1989, MITI hopes to develop a supercomputer that can perform 10 billion floating-point operations per second (GFLOPS), opening the way for scientific applications not currently possible, such as simulating atmospheric movement and analyzing satellite-transmitted photographs.

Next-Generation Industries Project

Sponsored by the National Research and Development Program, the Next-Generation Industries Project will run from 1981 to 1990. Fifty-eight participating companies are assigned to five research associations (three in new materials, one in biotechnology, and one in new semiconductor function elements) that are commissioned to conduct basic research.

The New Function Elements Project

The New Function Elements Project is Japan's next step in developing semiconductor technology. Organized by MITI, its members include Fujitsu, Hitachi, Matsushita, Mitsubishi, NEC, Oki, Sanyo, Sharp, Sumitomo Electric, and Toshiba. Its goals include the development of:

- Lamination techniques for building multiple-layer structures in which each layer is one atom thick
- The development of techniques for reducing cathode-to-anode distance within individual semiconductors to within 5,000 angstroms
- The development of methods for incorporating IC elements into chips in layers to increase the density of elements by 40 to 50 times, with specific targets including 8- to 10-layer elements integrating logic, memory, and other functions, and 5-or-more-layer elements with sensing and signal switching

It also has the goal of developing element, mounting, integration, and evaluation technologies with the ultimate aim of producing highly integrated ICs that are capable of withstanding extreme heat and radiation.

The Long-Term Industrial Technology Planning Committee (a planning and study committee of academics and experts commissioned by MITI) recently recommended that research in the 1990s be conducted in the following areas:

- Microtechnology--Billion-byte ICs (block line), genetic engineering
- Information technology--Artificial intelligence and organic superconductors using genetic engineering as an area of information technology
- Composite technology--Advanced mechantronics, large integrated systems for hostile industrial environments

NTT

NTT is currently developing a nationwide Information Network System (INS) that is designed to lay the foundation for Japan's communications system in the twenty-first century. Two major components of this system are the CAPTAIN (Character and Pattern Telephone Access Information Network) System and the DDX (Digital Data Exchange) Packet Switched Network. These systems will be connected to telephone and television channels to develop a Home Information System by the 1990s.

SEMICONDUCTOR INDUSTRY

Because of government-sponsored R&D projects and intercompany rivalry, Japanese semiconductor technology is moving at an extremely fast pace. In early 1983, several Japanese companies introduced their new 256K dynamic RAMs.

The following companies all have 1-megabit DRAMs in various stages of development: Fujitsu, Hitachi, Mitsubishi Electric, NEC, NTT, and Oki Electric. Toshiba is now producing 1-megabit DRAMs in volume production. A comparison of Japanese 1-megabit DRAMs from four of these companies is given in Table 1.

Table 1

COMPARISON OF SELECTED JAPANESE 1-MEGABIT DRAMs

	Toshiba	Hitachi	NEC	NTT
Process	NMOS	NMOS	NMOS	CMOS
Design Rule (Microns)	1.2	1.3	1.0	0.8
Organization	1Mb x 1	1Mb x 1	128K x 8	1Mb x 1
Chip Size (mm)	4.78 x 13.2	4.76 x 9.86	9.2 x 8.07	6.4 x 8.2
Cell Size (um)	5.0 x 6.4	3.0 x 7.0	5.5 x 8.0	3.7 x 5.4
Access Time (ns)	70	90	120	140
Cycle Time	N/A	260	300	350
Power (active/standby)	270/15mW	300/10mW	290/15mW	250/5mW
Packaging	18-pin,	18-pin,	30-pin,	N/A
300-mil DIP	300-mil	DIP	N/A	/A

N/A = Not Available

Source: DATAQUEST
August 1985

Fujitsu recently announced a 128K EPROM and a 288K CMOS EPROM; Toshiba, a multichip 256K EPROM; and Hitachi, a 128K EPROM. We believe that the trend toward higher densities and CMOS logic will continue unabated.

Gate arrays are also experiencing rapid growth in Japan. All major Japanese semiconductor manufacturers have jumped into production. However, they are unable to meet domestic market demand because of the large internal demand in their captive markets.

Japanese Semiconductor Manufacturing

Japanese firms are rapidly moving into gallium arsenide (GaAs), which promises even faster speeds for proposed supercomputers. Table 2 lists the GaAs facilities in Japan. Fujitsu has announced a direct-coupled high-electron mobility transistor (HEMT) logic designed on a GaAs substrate with a switching speed of 12.8 picoseconds (ps). We believe that Japanese industry may attempt to leapfrog CMOS technology by rapidly reducing the production cost for GaAs, a direction that has been signaled by the Optoelectronics Project's recent announcement of a computerized method for growing GaAs single crystals.

Table 2

JAPANESE GALLIUM ARSENIDE FACILITY LOCATIONS

Company	Region	Prefect	City
Canon	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo
Fujitsu Yamanashi Electric	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo
Furukawa Electric Co.	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo
Hitachi	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo
Maribeni Corp.	Kinki	Osaka	Osaka
Matsushita Electronics	Kinki	Osaka	Osaka
Mitsubishi LSI R&D Lab	Kinki	Hyogo	Hyogo
NEC	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo
NTT Atsugi Electric Communication Labs	N/A	N/A	Atsugi
New Japan Radio Company	Kanto	Saitama	Kawagoe
Oki Research Lab	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo
Sanyo	Kinki	Osaka	Osaka
Sharp Electronics Corp.	Kinki	Osaka	Osaka
Showa Denko	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo
Sony Corp. Research Center	Kanto	Kanagawa	Yokohama
Sony Corp. Semiconductor	N/A	N/A	Atsugi
Toshiba R&D Center	Kanto	Kanagawa	Kawasaki

N/A = Not Available

Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Japanese Semiconductor Manufacturing

In the area of bipolar digital ICs, Japanese companies will continue to be competitive in advanced transistor-transistor logic (TTL) and emitter-coupled logic (ECL) and in bipolar RAMs, PROMs, and gate arrays. Major manufacturers will follow the U.S. lead in advanced TTL devices, especially Texas Instruments' Advanced Schottky (AS) and Fairchild's Advanced Schottky (FAST), and offer compatible devices as second-source suppliers. Japanese research in ECLs is heating up because of their potential use in supercomputer systems.

Newcomers and Start-ups

Table 3 lists recent newcomers and start-ups in the Japanese semiconductor manufacturing industry. Newcomers far outnumber start-ups. Newcomers are established companies from other industries that are moving into the semiconductor industry. Thus, 1984 witnessed several companies from the watch and calculator industry move into CMOS memory, logic, and gate arrays. The same year saw companies from heavy industry, Minebea, for example, move into MOS memory using technology transfer.

Table 3

JAPANESE NEWCOMERS AND START-UPS

Company	1984 Sales (Millions $)	Largest Product Area
Fuji Electric	$211	Discretes
New JRC	$ 66	Linear ICs
Rohn	$241	Linear ICs, Discretes
Sanken	$161	Discretes
Shindengen	$106	Diodes
Sony	$177	Linear ICs
Stanley	$ 41	Optoelectronics
Suwa Seikosha	$136	MOS Logic
Minebea	N/A	MOS Memory
Casio	N/A	64K/256K DRAMs
Pioneer	N/A	CMOS Memory Gate Arrays
Ricoh	$ 32	CMOS Memory Gate Arrays
Yamaha	N/A	CMOS Memory Logic
NMB Semiconductor	N/A	CMOS Memories
A&D Company	N/A	AID, D/A Converters
Alpha Electronics	N/A	Precision Resistors
Kyoto Semiconductor	N/A	Optoelectronics

N/A = Not Available

Source: DATAQUEST
August 1985

Japanese Semiconductor Manufacturing

SEMICONDUCTOR MANUFACTURING EQUIPMENT

Japanese semiconductor capital investment grew 15.5 percent annually between 1973 and 1977. Total capital spending for the 10 major Japanese firms jumped 369 percent from 1978 to 1982.

Materials

The yields for Japanese 64K DRAMs are about 10 percent higher than those of U.S. and European manufacturers who use the same production equipment. This difference can be partly attributed to advances in material technology. Japanese manufacturers tend to place more importance on chemicals (including photoresist) that have a higher degree of purity. Japanese manufacturers also use more glass (which has very low expansion properties) for photomasks.

Wafer Processing

Demand for wafer steppers is growing rapidly. At present, steppers are being supplied by Perkin-Elmer's recently acquired Censor Corporation (distributed exclusively through Hakuto); Eaton Optimetrix (distributed exclusively through C. Itoh); GCA (distributed exclusively through Sumitomo Corporation); Hitachi Ltd.; Nippon Kogaku K.K. (Nikon); and Ultratech, a division of General Signal (distributed exclusively through Omron Tateisi Electronics Co.). We believe that Canon, which now has a dominant market position in contact/proximity aligners, will also make inroads into the stepper market shortly.

The demand for 5X steppers is rapidly increasing in Japan, and we believe that there may be a shortage of these items. To lessen stepper shortage problems, manufacturers have begun to employ a mixture of contact/projection aligners and steppers. The extent of mixing and matching varies with the individual manufacturer. Generally speaking, steppers are used to form the more sophisticated areas such as gates and the polysilicon layer, while contact/projection aligners are used to form electrodes.

Etching

Japan has witnessed improvement in the technologies of etching, film deposition, ion implantation, and sputtering. In the area of dry etching, reactive ion etching has been used in aluminum film etching to produce 64K DRAMs. Low-pressure chemical vapor deposition (CVD) has been introduced by Kokusai Electric and Tel/Thermco; ion implantation by Eaton, Ulvac, and Varian; and sputtering by Anelva, MRC, Tokuda, and Ulvac.

Assembly

The trend in assembly technology is toward higher speed and higher reliability. Automation is widely used in the scrubbing and die-bonding processes.

Testing

Cost reduction is particularly important in the testing area. At present, it is possible to test eight devices simultaneously. We expect Takeda Riken to successfully develop the technology to examine 16 devices simultaneously in the near future.

SEMICONDUCTOR PLANT DISTRIBUTION

There are approximately 140 semiconductor plant locations in Japan (see Table 4). There are eleven geographic regions in Japan including Okinawa (see Figure 1). Table 5 and Figure 2 provide a breakdown of semiconductor plants by these regions. The Kanto region, which includes the prefectures of Chiba, Gumma, Ibaraki, Kanagawa, Saitama, Tochigi, and Tokyo, has almost twice as many locations (25 percent of the total) as any other single region. (See Figures 3 through 11 and Table 5 for the distribution of plants by prefecture within a region.)

Table 4

JAPANESE SEMICONDUCTOR FABRICATION PLANT LOCATIONS

Company	Region	Prefecture	City	Products	Technology
Fairchild	Kyushu	Nagasaki	Isahaya	256K, 64K SRAM, TTL Gates	MOS
Fairchild	Kyushu	Nagasaki	Isahaya	High-speed TTL, TRANS	BIP
Fuji Electric	Tosan	Nagano	Matsumoto	TRANS	MOS
Fuji Electric	Tosan	Nagano	Matsumoto	TRN, DIO	LIN
Fuji Electric	Tosan	Nagano	Matsumoto	TRN	MOS
Fuji Electric	Tosan	Yamanashi	Yamanashi	N/A	N/A
Fuji Xerox	Tokai	MIE	Suzuka	OPT	OPT
Fujitsu	Tosan	Yamanashi	N/A	GaAs, TRANS	LIN, OPT
Fujitsu	Tohoku	Fukushima	Fuzu No. 2 Plant	Research	N/A
Fujitsu	Tohoku	Fukushima	Aizu	MEM, LOG, MPU, LIN, TRA, DIO	MOS, BIP, DIS
Fujitsu	Kanto	Kanagawa	Kawasaki	MEM, LOG, MPU, LIN, TRA, DIO	MOS, BIP, DIS
Fujitsu	Tohoku	Fukushima	Aizu-Wakamatsu	MPU, LOGIC	MOS
Fujitsu	Tokai	MIE	Tado	MEM, LOGIC	MOS
Fujitsu	Tohoku	Iwate	Iwate	MEM	MOS
Fujitsu	Tohoku	Iwate	Kanegasaki	256K, 64K DRAMS	MOS
Fujitsu VLSI	Tosan	Gifu	Minokamo	Research	MOS, BIP
Fujitsu Yamanashi Electric	Tosan	Yamanashi	Showa	LOG	MOS
Hitachi	Kanto	Chiba	Mobara	MOS, MEM	MOS
Hitachi	Kanto	Chiba	Mobara	MEM	MOS
Hitachi	Tohoku	Akita	Naka	N/A	N/A
Hitachi	Kanto	Tokyo	Musashi	MEM, LOG, LIN, MPU, DIO, OPT	MOS, BIP, LIN
Hitachi	Kanto	Gunma	Takasaki	LOG, MEM, LIN, TRANS, DIO	MOS, BIP, LIN
Hitachi	Tosan	Yamanashi	Kofu	MEM, MPU, LOGIC	MOS, BIP
Hitachi	Tosan	Yamanashi	Kofu	64K DRAMs	MOS
Hitachi	Hokkaido	Hokkaido	Chitose	N/A	N/A
Hitachi	Hokkaido	Hokkaido	Chitose	MEM	MOS
IBM	Kinki	Shiga	Yasu	MEM	MOS
International Microtech	Tosan	Nagano	Kitaina	TRANS, DIO, OPT	DIS, OPT
Kodenshi No. 5 Plant	Kinki	Kyoto	Kyoto	BIP, TRANS	BIP, DIS, OPT
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Toyama	Ouzu	N/A	N/A
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Toyama	Ouzu	MEM	MOS
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Niigata	Arai	MEM, MPU	BIP, MOS
Matsushita Electronics	Kinki	Kyoto	Nagaokakyo	MEM, LOG, MPU, LIN, TRA, DIO	MOS, BIP, DIS
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Niigata	Arai	64K DRAMS	BIP
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Toyama	Ouzu	LIN	LIN
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Toyama	Ouzu	MPU, LOGIC	MOS
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Niigata	Arai	MEM, LOG, MPU, LIN	BIP, MOS, DIS
Matsushita Electronics	Hokuriku	Toyama	Ouzu	256K, 64K DRAM, MPU	MOS
Mitsubishi	Kyushu	Fukuoda	N/A	LOG, LIN	BIP, LIN
Mitsubishi	Kinki	Hyogo	N/A	TRANS, DIO, OPT	DIS
Mitsubishi	Kinki	Hyogo	Kitaitami	LOG, TRANS, DIO	MOS, DIS
Mitsubishi	Shikoku	Kochi	Kagami	MPU	N/A
Mitsubishi	Shikoku	Ehime	Waijo	256K DRAM	MOS
Mitsubishi	Kyushu	Kumamoto	Kumamoto	MEM, LOG, MPU, LIN	MOS, BIP, LIN
Mitsubishi	Kyushu	Fukuoda	Fukuoda	LOG, TRANS, DIO	BIP, DIS
Mitsubishi	Shikoku	Ehime	Sanjo	MEM	MOS
Mitsubishi	Kyushu	Fukuoda	Fukuoda	Research	N/A
Mitsubishi	Shikoku	Ehime	N/A	Research	N/A
Mitsubishi	N/A	N/A	Kouchi	MPU	MOS

(Continued)

Table 4 (Continued)

JAPANESE SEMICONDUCTOR FABRICATION PLANT LOCATIONS

Company	Region	Prefecture	City	Products	Technology
Mitsubishi	Kyushu	Fukuoda	N/A	LOG	BIP, MOS
Mitsubishi	Shikoku	Ehime	Saijo	64K DRAM	MOS
Mitsumi Electric	Kanto	Kanagawa	Atsugi	Research	N/A
Motorola	Tohoku	Miyagi	Izumi City	MOS, BIP, MPU	MOS, BIP
Motorola	Tohoku	Fukushima	Aizu	MEM, MEM, MOS, MPU	MOS
Motorola	Tohoku	Fukushima	Aizu	N/A	N/A
NEC	Chugoku	Yamaguchi	Yamaguchi	MEM, LOG, MPU	MOS
NEC	Tohoku	Yamagata	Tsuruoka	LIN, TRANS	LIN, DIS
NEC	Kanto	Kanagawa	Sagamihara	MEM, LOG	MOS, BIP
NEC	Kyushu	Kumamoto	Kyushu	MOS, MEM, MPU, LOG	MOS, BIP
NEC	Kyushu	Kagoshima	Kagoshima	DIO, OPT	DIS
NEC	Kinki	Osaka	N/A	TRANS, DIO, OPT	LIN, OPT
NEC	Kyushu	Kumamoto	Kumamoto	MEM, MPU, LOG	MOS
NEC	Chugoku	Yamaguchi	Yamaguchi	N/A	N/A
NEC	Tohoku	Yamagata	Yamagata	MOS, LOG, LIN, TRANS	MOS, DIS, LIN
NEC	Kinki	Shiga	Ohtsu	MEM, MPU, LIN, TRANS, DIO	MOS, BIP, LIN
NEC	Kyushu	Kumamoto	N/A	N/A	N/A
NEC	Tohoku	Yamagata	Takahama	BIP, LOG, LIN, TRANS	BIP, LIN, DIS
NEC	Kinki	Shiga	Yokkaichi	MOS, MEM, TRANS, DIODES	MOS, DIS
NEC	Kinki	N/A	Kansai	TRANS, DIO	DIS
NEC	Kanto	Kanagawa	Tamagawa	MEM, LOG, LIN, DIS	MOS
NEC	Kanto	Kanagawa	Saganihiara	LOG	MOS
NEC	Kinki	N/A	Kansai	MEM	MOS
New Japan Radio	Kanto	Saitama	Kawagoe	MOS, LOG, LIN, TRANS, OPTO	MOS, DIS, OPT
New Japan Radio	Kanto	Siitama	Kawagoe	GaAs, TRANS, DIO, OPT	LIN
New Japan Radio	Kanto	Saitama	Kawagoe	N/A	N/A
New Japan Radio	Kanto	Saitama	Kawagoe	N/A	GaAs
Nihon Semiconductor	Kanto	Ibaraki	N/A	LOG	MOS
Niigata Sanjo Denshi	Hokuriku	Niigata	Niigata	MEM, LOG, MPU	MOS
Nippon Gakki	Kyushu	Kagoshima	Kagoshima	MOS, LOG, LIN	MOS, DIS
Nippon Gakki	Tokai	Shizuoka	Toyooka	BIP, LOG, MOS, LOG, LIN, TRANS	BIP, MOS, DIS
Nippon Precision Circuits	Kanto	Gumma	N/A	LOG	MOS, LIN
Nippon Precision Circuits	Kanto	Tochigi	Shiobara	Research	N/A
NMB Semiconductor	Kanto	Chiba	Tateyama	256K CMOS RAM, 64K, FAST 5	MOS
NMB Semiconductor	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo	CMOS Memories	MOS
NMB Semiconductor	Kanto	Chiba	Tateyama	MEM	MOS
Oki Electric	Tohoku	Miyagi	Miyagi	MEM, MPU, LOG	MOS
Oki Electric	Kyushu	Miyazaki	N/A	MEM, MPU	MOS
Oki Electric	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo	MEM, LOG, MPU, LIN, TRANS, DIO	MOS, BIP, DIS
Oki Electric	Kyushu	Miyazaki	Miyazaki	MEM, MPU	MOS
Oki Electric	Kyushu	Miyazaki	Miyazaki	256K, 64K DRAM, 64K SRAM	MOS
Origin Electric	Kanto	Tochigi	Mamada	TRANS, DIO	DIS
Pioneer Electric	Tosan	Yamanashi	Koufu	Custom LSI, SAW Device	N/A
Ricoh	Kinki	Osaka	Ikeda	MOS, MEM, MOS, MPU	MOS
Ricoh	Kinki	Osaka	Ikeda	MEM	MOS
Rohm	Kyushu	Fujuoka	Amagai	TRANS	DIS
Rohm	Kinki	Kyoto	Kyoto	BIP, LOG, LIN, OPT	BIP, DIS, OPT
Rohm	Kinki	Okayama	Ihara	TRANS	N/A

(Continued)

Table 4 (Continued)

JAPANESE SEMICONDUCTOR FABRICATION PLANT LOCATIONS

Company	Region	Prefecture	City	Products	Technology
Sanken Electric	Kanto	Saitama	Niiza	TRANS, DIO	DIS
Sanken Electric	N/A	N/A	N/A	TRANS, DIO	DIS
Sanken Electric	Kanto	Saitama	Kawagoe	TRANS, DIO	DIS
Sanken Electric	Tokoku	Yamagata	Yamagata	TRANS, DIO	LIN
Sanki Engineering	Kanto	Kanagawa	N/A	SEMI LASER	OPT
Seiko Instruments	Kanto	Chiba	Takakuka	N/A	N/A
Sharp	Chugoku	Hiroshima	Fukuyama	MEM	MOS
Sharp	Kinki	Nara	Nara	TRANS, DIO, OPT	DIS, OPT
Sharp	Kinki	Nara	Shinjo	Research	N/A
Sharp	Kinki	Nara	Tenri	LOG, MEM, MPU	BIP, MOS
Sharp	Chugoku	Hiroshima	Fukiyama	64K, 16K DRAM, ROM, EEPROM	MOS
Shindengen Electric	Kanto	Saitama	Hanno	BIP, TRANS	BIP, DIS
Sony	Kyushu	Oita	Oita	MOS, MEM, MOS, LOG	BIP, MOS, DIS
Stanley Electric	Kanto	Kanagawa	Hatano	Research	N/A
Stanley Electric	Tohoku	Yamagata	Tsuruoka	N/A	N/A
Stanley Electric	Tohoku	Fukushima	Iwaki	N/A	N/A
Suwa Seikosha	Tosan	Nagano	N/A	MEM	MOS
Suwa Seikosha	Tosan	Nagano	N/A	MEM	MOS
Suwa Seikosha	Kanto	Saitama	Fujimi	1MB DRAM	MOS
Suwa Seikosha	Kanto	Saitama	Fujimi	MOS, MEM, MOS, MPU, MOS, LOG	MOS
Texas Instruments	Kanto	Saitama	Hatogaya	MOS, MPU, MOS, LOG	BIP, DIS
Texas Instruments	Kanto	Ibaraki	Miho	256K DRAM	MOS
Texas Instruments	Kyushu	Oita	Hiiji	BIP, LOG, LIN	MOS
Texas Instruments	N/A	N/A	Hatogya	N/A	MOS
Texas Instruments	Kanto	N/A	Miho	N/A	MOS
Texas Instruments	Kanto	N/A	Miho	256K DRAM	MOS
Tokyo Sanjo	Chugoku	Tottori	Tottori	OPT	N/A
Tokyo Sanjo	Tosan	Gifu	Kaihatsu	LOG	MOS
Tokyo Sanjo	Kinki	Hyogo	Sumoto	Research	N/A
Tokyo Sanjo	Kanto	Tokyo	Tokyo	64K DRAM, MPU	BIP, MOS
Tokyo Sanjo	Hokuriku	Niigata	Niigata	MEM, MPU	MOS
Tokyo Sanyo Electric	Kanto	Gunma	N/A	TRANS	LIN
Toshiba	N/A	N/A	N/A	LOG, MEM, MPU	BIP, MOS
Toshiba	Kyushu	Fukuoda	Nohgata	N/A	N/A
Toshiba	Tohoku	Iwate	N/A	MOS, MPU, MOS, LOG	MOS
Toshiba	Kyushu	Fukuoda	Kitakyushu	LIN	LIN
Toshiba	Tohoku	Iwate	Kitakami	MOS, MPU, MOS, LOG	MOS
Toshiba	Kyushu	Fukuoda	Buzen	OPT	DIS
Toshiba	Kyushu	Oita	Oita	MOS, MEM, MOS, MPU, MOS, LOG	MOS
Toshiba	Kanto	Kanagawa	Kawasaki	LOG, MEM, MPU	BIP, MOS
Toshiba	Tohoku	Iwate	N/A	Gate Arrays, MPU, MEM	BIP, MOS
Toshiba	Chugoku	Hiroshima	Himeji	TRANS, DIO	LIN
Toshiba	Kinki	Hyogo	Himeji	TRANS, DIO	DIS

N/A = Not Available

Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Table 5

JAPANESE SEMICONDUCTOR FABRICATION PLANT DISTRIBUTION

Region	Prefecture	Plant Count
Shikoku	Ehime	4
	Kochi	1
Subtotal		5
Kyushu	Fukuoka	8
	Kagoshima	2
	Kumamoto	4
	Miyazaki	3
	Nagasaki	2
	Oita	3
	Saga	1
Subtotal		23
Chugoku	Hiroshima	3
	Tottori	1
	Yamaguchi	2
Subtotal		6
Kinki	Hyogo	4
	Kyoto	3
	Nara	3
	Okayama	1
	Osaka	3
	Shiga	3
	Other*	2
Subtotal		19
Tokai	Mie	2
	Shizuoka	1
Subtotal		3

(Continued)

Table 5 (Continued)

JAPANESE SEMICONDUCTOR FABRICATION PLANT DISTRIBUTION

Region	Prefecture	Plant Count
Tosan	Gifu	2
	Nagano	6
	Yamanashi	6
Subtotal		14
Hokuriku	Niigate	5
	Toyama	5
Subtotal		10
Hokkaido	Hokkaido	2
Subtotal		2
Tohoku	Akita	1
	Fukushima	6
	Iwate	5
	Miyagi	2
	Yamagata	5
Subtotal		19
Kanto	Chiba	5
	Gumma	3
	Ibaraki	2
	Kanagawa	8
	Saitama	9
	Tochigi	2
	Tokyo	4
	Other*	2
Subtotal		35
Not Available		4
Total		140

*The number of plants is known, however, the region(s) is unknown.

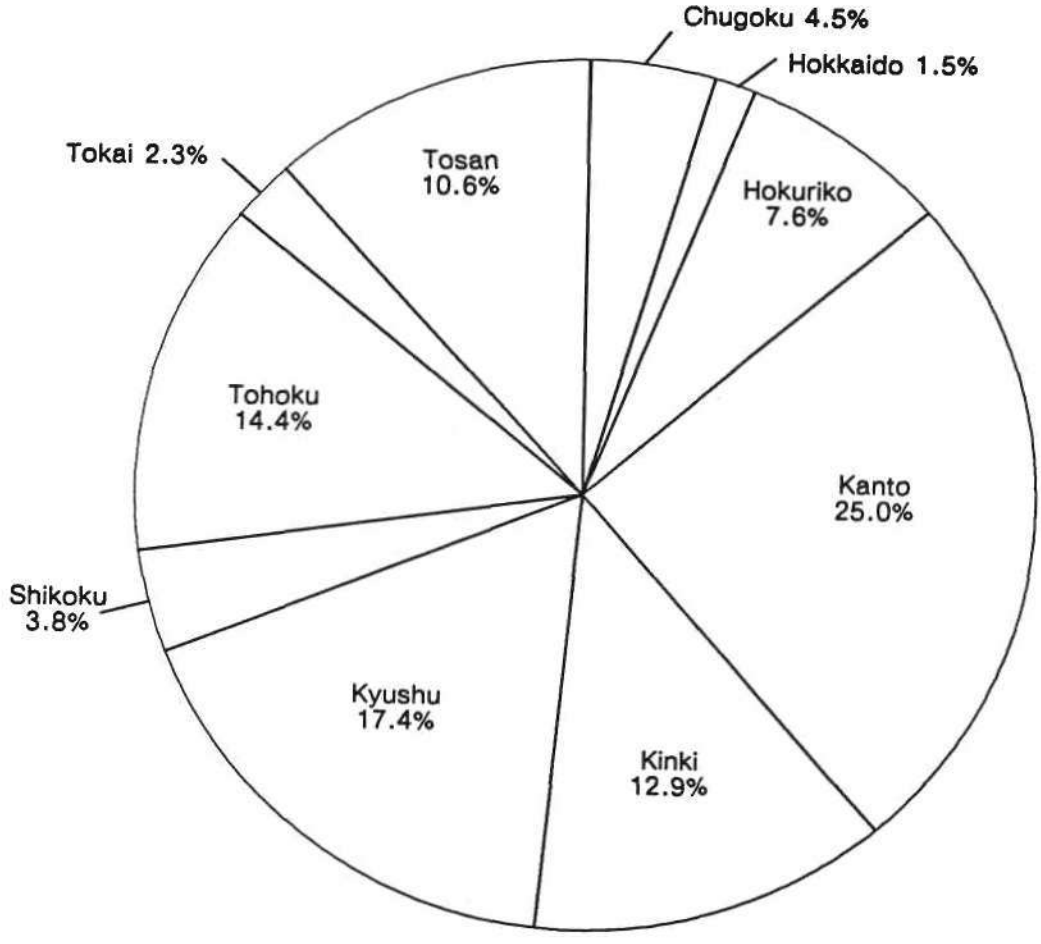
Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 1

MAP OF MODERN REGIONS

Figure 2

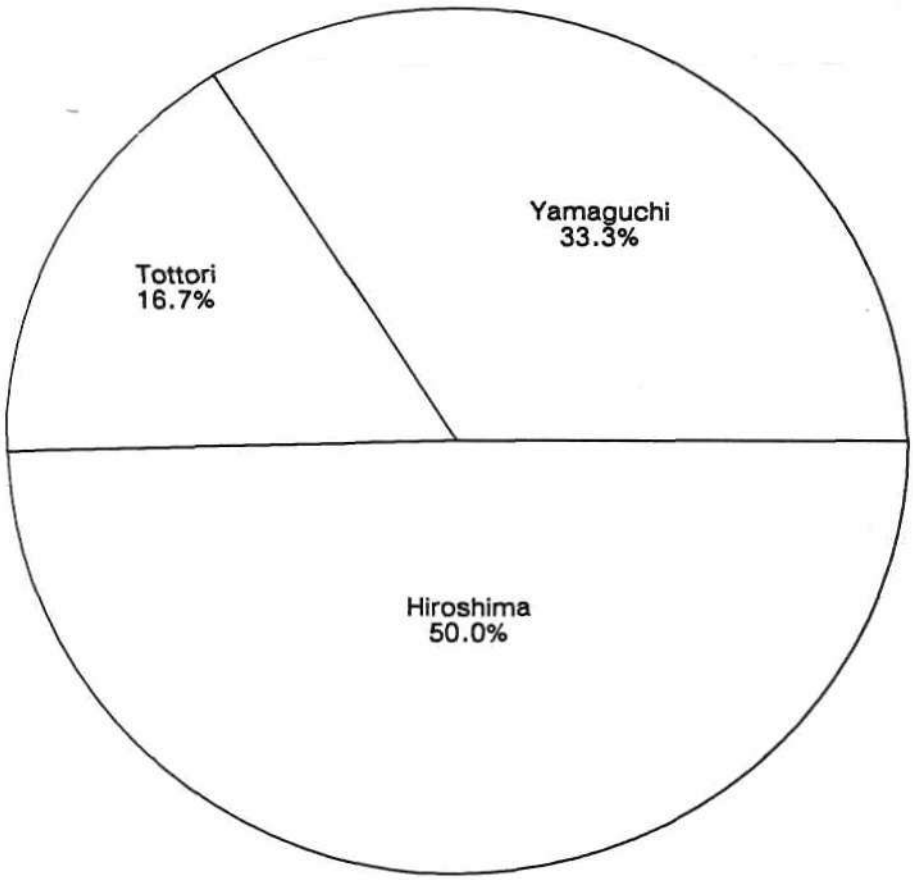
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 3

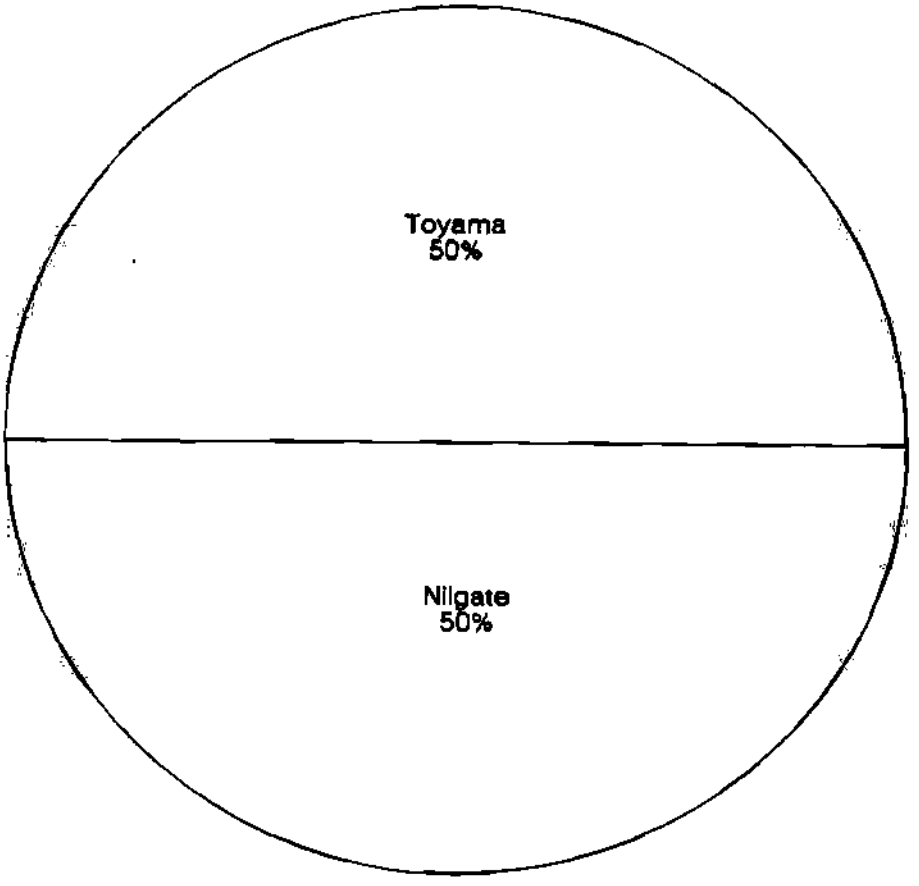
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN CHUGOKU REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 4

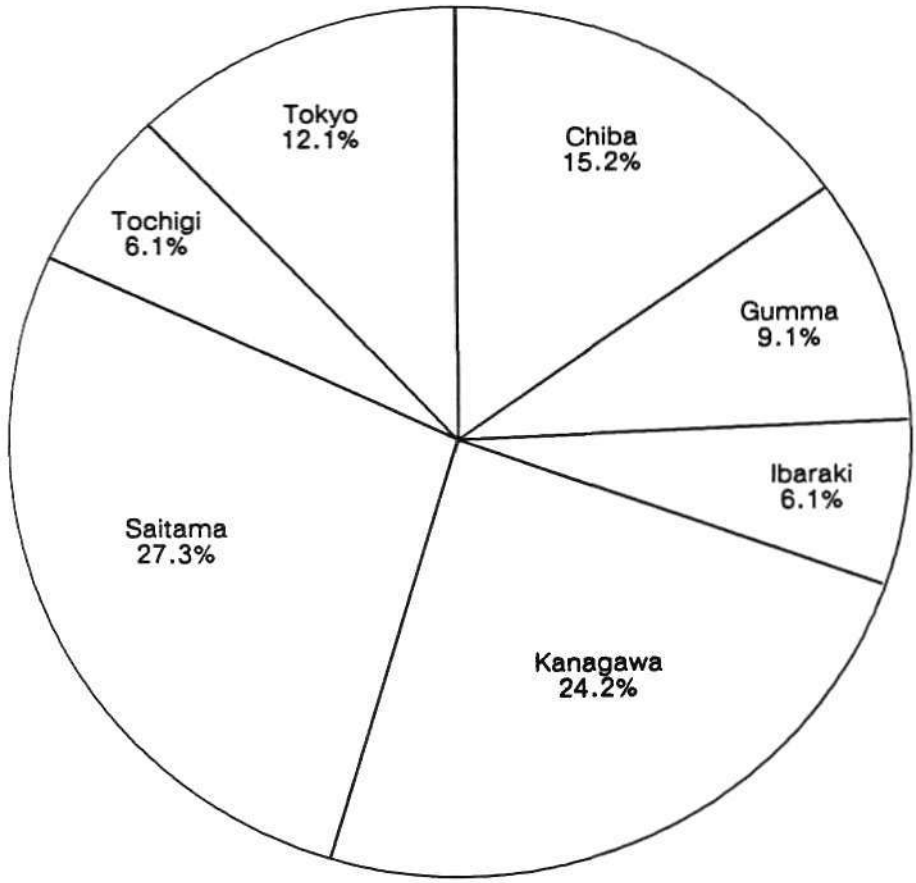
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN HOKURIKU REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 5

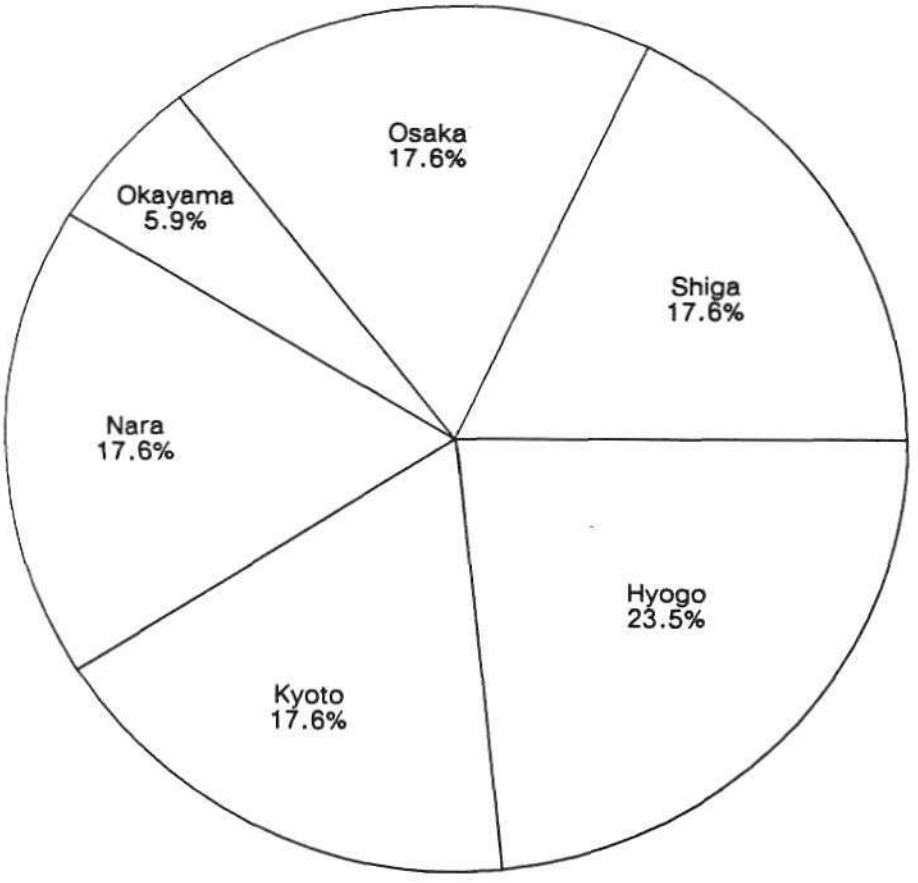
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN KANTO REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 6

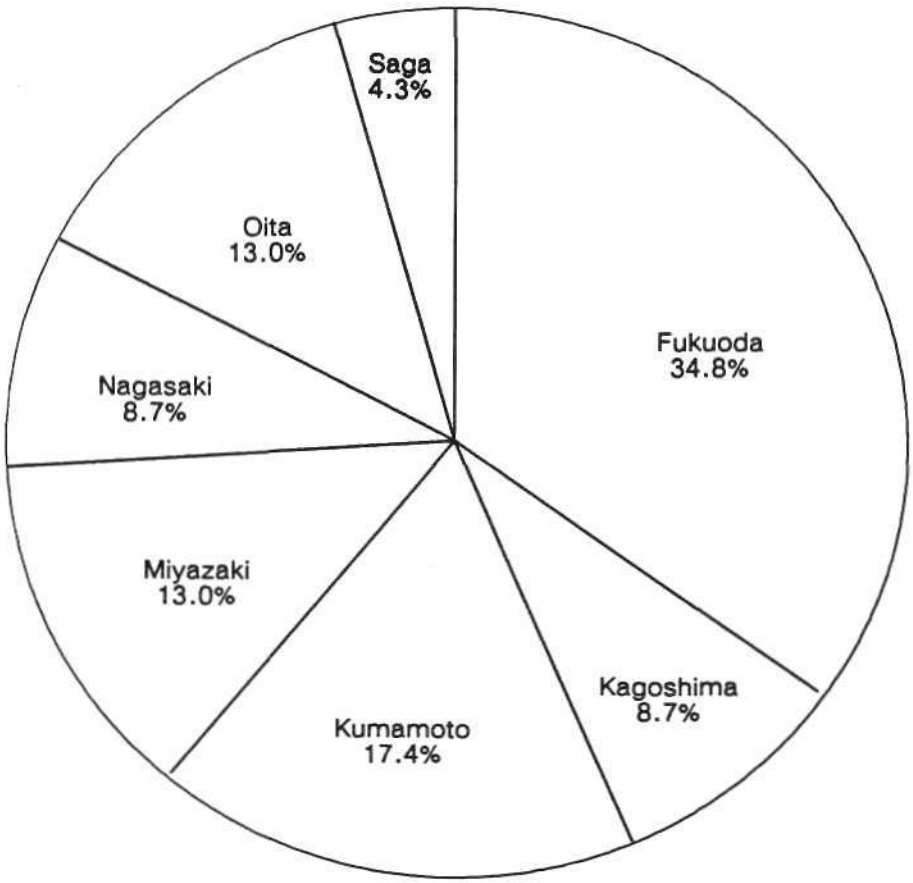
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN KINKI REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 7

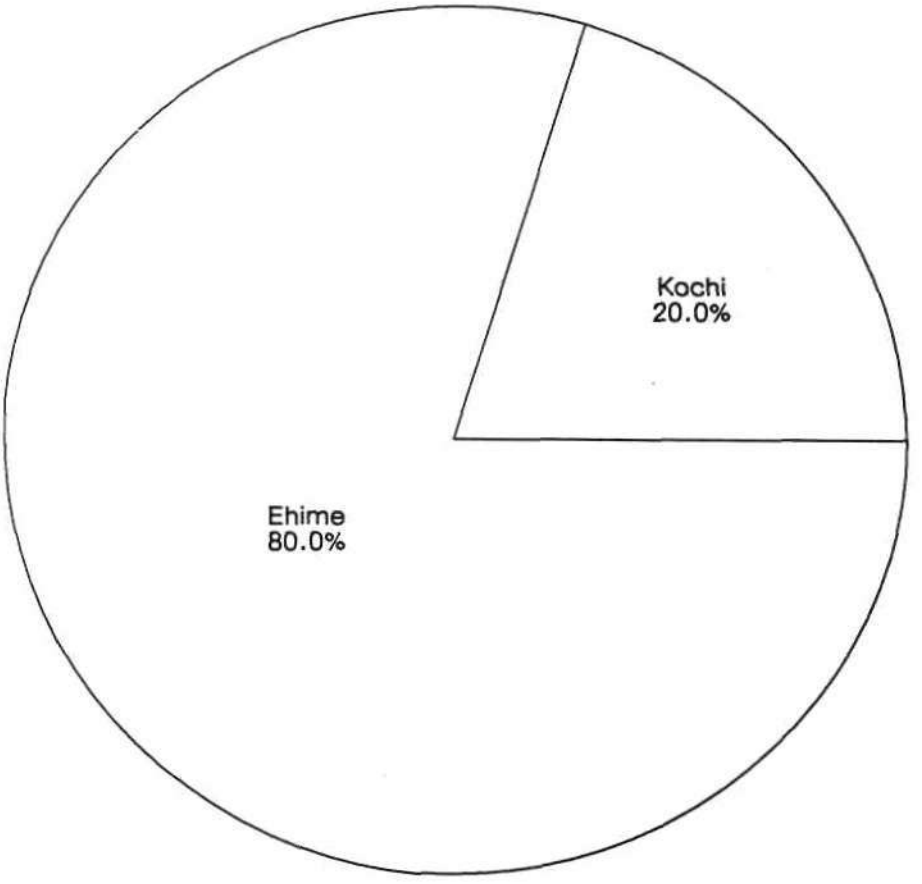
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN KYUSHU REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 8

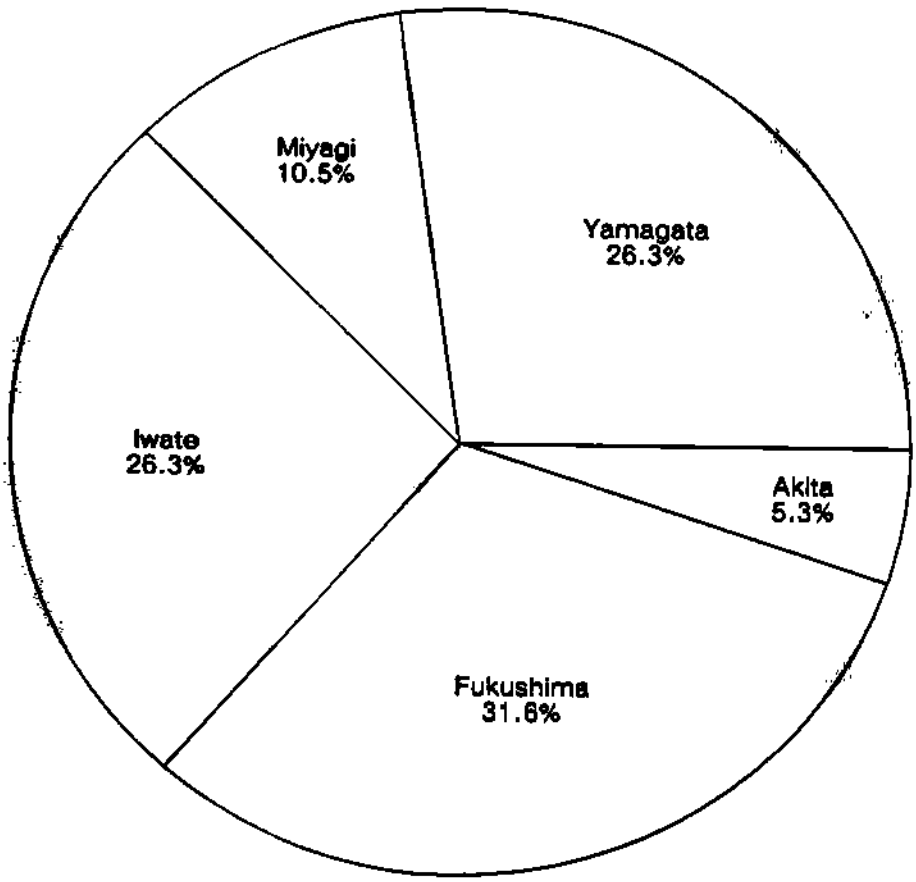
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN SHIKOKU REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 9

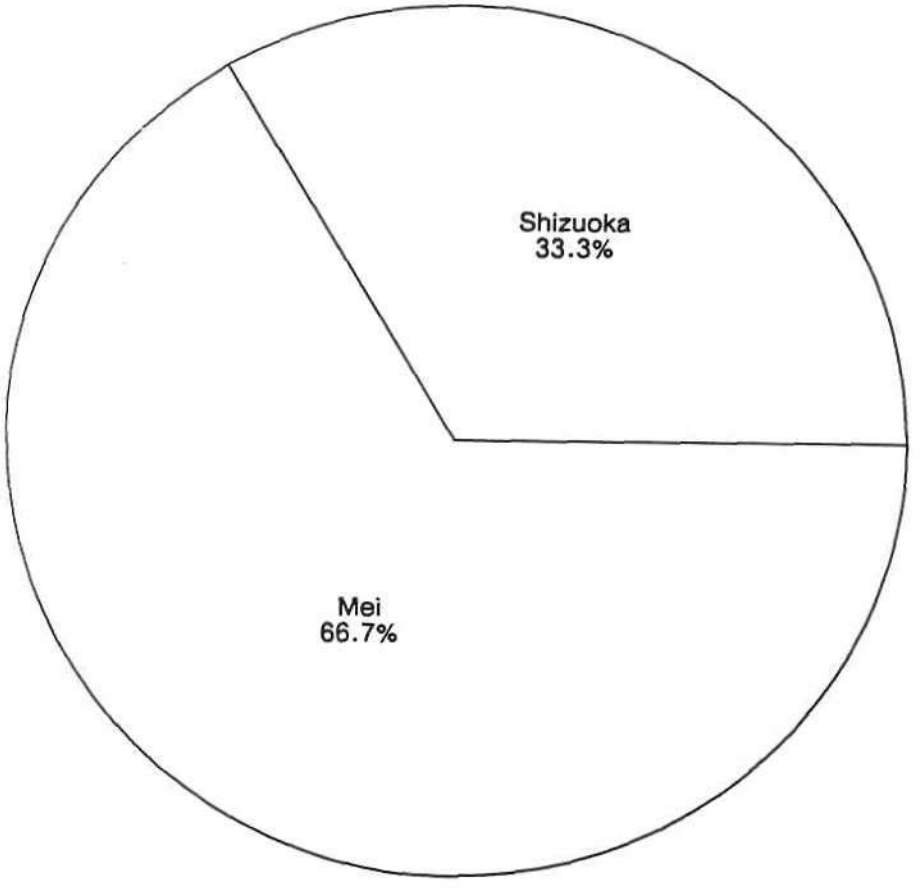
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN TOHOKU REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

Figure 10

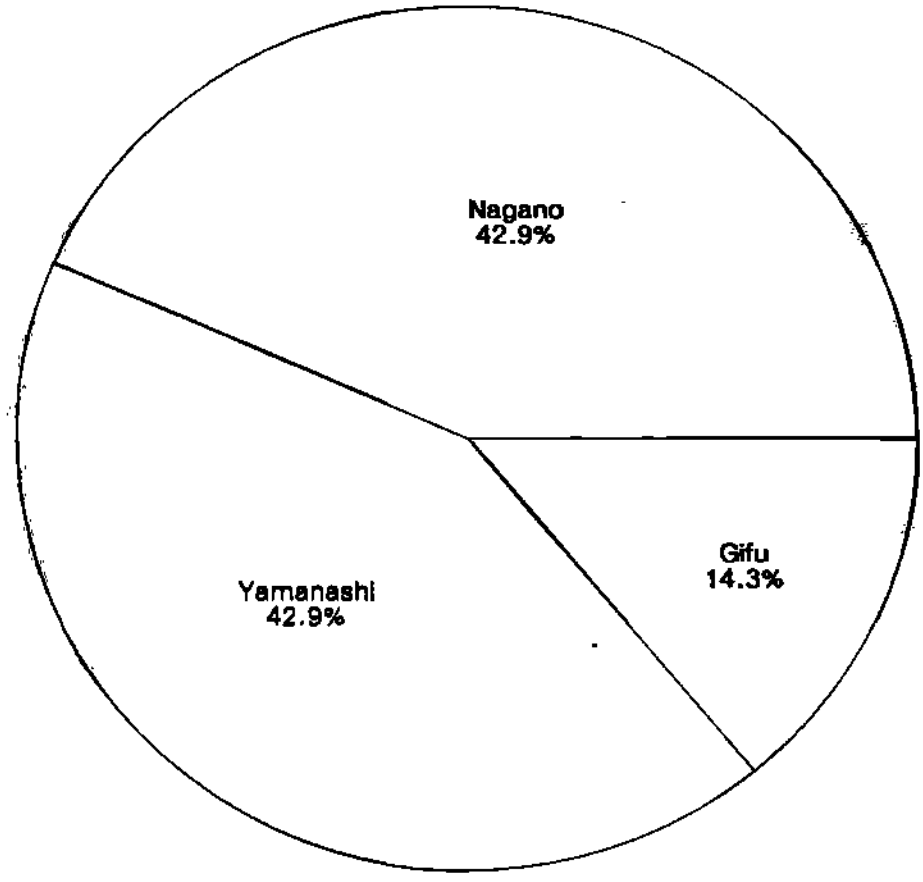
DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN TOKAI REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

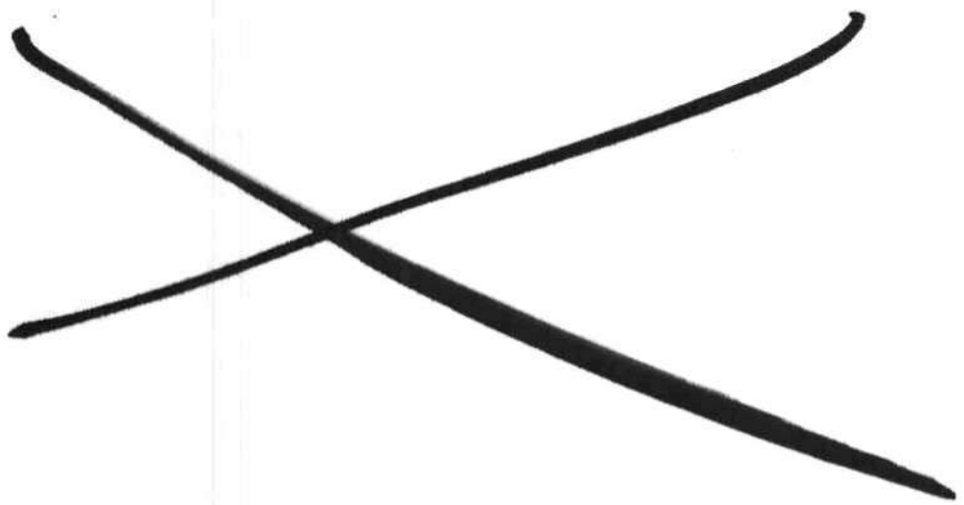
Figure 11

DISTRIBUTION OF JAPANESE FAB LOCATIONS
BY PREFECTURE IN TOSAN REGION



Source: DATAQUEST
December 1985

U.S. SEMICONDUCTOR R&D EXPENDITURES—
1987



U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures

Semiconductor research and development is vital for the continued development of new products, applications, and processes. Very few industries are able to match the semiconductor industry's record for R&D expenditures as a percentage of revenue. In the semiconductor industry, R&D expenditures are seed corn from which the future emerges.

Table 1 and Figure 1 show U.S. company R&D expenditures. For almost every company in every year, good and bad, R&D expenditures have risen. The compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of R&D expenditures from 1975 to 1988 has been 21 percent.

Table 2 and Figure 2 show U.S. company semiconductor R&D expenditures as a percentage of semiconductor revenue. The general upward trend of this ratio reflects the steady growth and R&D spending for increasingly complex devices and processes. The years when this ratio has turned down are years when revenue has increased sharply; the years when the ratio shows a sharp increase are those in which revenue has fallen.

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures

Table 1

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures
(Millions of Dollars)

Company	1975	1976	1977	1978	1979	1980	1981
Adaptec	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Advanced Micro Devices	$ 2	$ 5	$ 7	$ 10	$ 24	$ 33	$ 42
Altera	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Analog Devices	N/A	N/A	N/A	3	5	7	8
California Micro Devices	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Chips & Technologies	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Cypress	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Harris	N/A	N/A	N/A	6	9	13	16
IDT	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
IMP	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Intel	13	19	25	37	60	89	109
LSI Logic	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Linear Technology	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Micron Technology	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Motorola	44	43	49	60	75	92	116
National Semiconductor	20	25	33	48	66	80	83
SEEQ	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Siliconix	1	2	3	4	6	7	6
Silicon Systems	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Texas Instruments	55	56	59	66	77	102	119
VLSI Technology	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Xicor	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
ZyMOS	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Total	$135	$150	$175	$234	$321	$423	$500
Percent Change	N/A	10%	17%	34%	37%	32%	18%

(Continued)

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures

Table 1 (Continued)

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures
(Millions of Dollars)

Company	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Adaptec	N/A	N/A	N/A	$ 2	$ 5	$ 6	$ 7
Advanced Micro Devices	$ 63	$106	$ 169	207	223	248	208
Altera		0	1	3	3	4	6
Analog Devices	11	15	21	27	33	56	61
California Micro Devices	N/A	0	1	1	1	2	3
Chips & Technologies	N/A	N/A	N/A	2	4	12	28
Cypress	N/A	2	5	5	10	19	32
Harris	20	22	44	47	36	37	45
IDT	1	2	5	11	14	18	26
IMP	N/A	3	3	3	2	7	8
Intel	122	132	163	175	178	234	318
LSI Logic	2	4	12	14	22	29	39
Linear Technology	2	3	2	2	3	4	5
Micron Technology	2	1	4	5	4	7	12
Motorola	128	155	176	192	199	207	225
National Semiconductor	89	114	158	187	190	213	255
SEEQ	N/A	5	6	6	7	8	9
Siliconix	8	9	12	15	16	17	17
Silicon Systems	1	2	3	5	8	9	12
Texas Instruments	128	163	195	214	256	270	290
VLSI Technology	3	8	14	20	23	31	38
Xicor	N/A	5	8	11	9	8	10
ZyMOS	N/A	4	5	4	4	5	7
Total	$580	$757	$1,007	$1,159	$1,250	$1,448	$1,661
Percent Change	16%	31%	33%	15%	8%	16%	15%

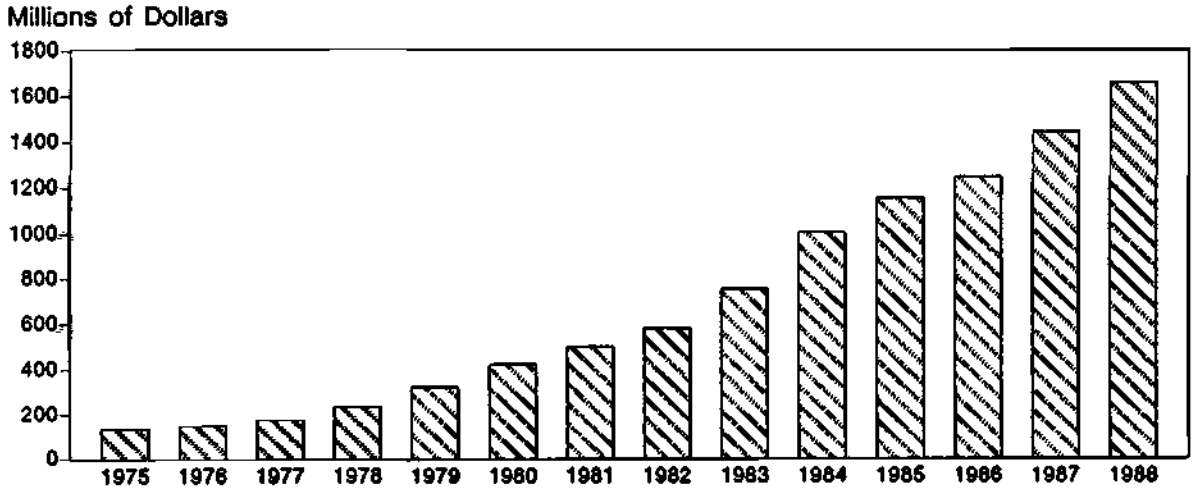
Note: Columns may not add to totals shown because of rounding.
N/A = Not Applicable

Source: Dataquest
January 1989

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures

Figure 1

U.S. Company Semiconductor R&D Expenditures



0003122-1

Source: Dataquest January 1989

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures

Table 2

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures As a Percentage of Revenue

Company	1975	1976	1977	1978	1979	1980	1981
Adaptec	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Advanced Micro Devices	8%	14%	8%	8%	12%	12%	15%
Altera	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Analog Devices	N/A	N/A	N/A	6%	8%	9%	9%
Califonria Micro Devices	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Chips & Technology	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Cypress	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Harris	N/A	N/A	N/A	7%	8%	7%	10%
IDT	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
IMP	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Intel	10%	8%	13%	12%	14%	15%	21%
LSI Logic	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Linear Technology	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Micron Technology	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Motorola	13%	10%	9%	9%	8%	8%	10%
National Semiconductor	4%	6%	5%	6%	7%	6%	7%
SEEQ	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Siliconix	5%	8%	10%	9%	11%	11%	11%
Silicon Systems	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Texas Instruments	11%	9%	8%	7%	6%	6%	9%
VLSI Technology	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Xicor	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
ZyMOS	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Total	9%	8%	8%	8%	8%	8%	10%

(Continued)

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures

Table 2 (Continued)

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures As a Percentage of Revenue

Company	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Adaptec	N/A	N/A	N/A	9%	10%	10%
Advanced Micro Devices	19%	17%	15%	26%	27%	24%
Altera	N/A	N/A	467%	70%	28%	20%
Analog Devices	11%	10%	10%	12%	14%	20%
Califonria Micro Devices	N/A	7%	8%	8%	8%	10%
Chips & Technologies	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	11%	10%
Cypress	N/A	N/A	123%	29%	21%	24%
Harris	13%	13%	17%	19%	14%	13%
IDT	45%	23%	15%	21%	19%	18%
IMP	N/A	20%	10%	11%	7%	16%
Intel	20%	17%	14%	17%	18%	16%
LSI Logic	38%	14%	14%	10%	11%	11%
Linear Technology	N/A	63%	14%	13%	10%	8%
Micron Technology	40%	4%	3%	15%	6%	6%
Motorola	11%	9%	8%	10%	10%	8%
National Semiconductor	8%	8%	8%	13%	14%	15%
SEEQ	N/A	54%	11%	20%	21%	15%
Siliconix	13%	13%	12%	14%	14%	15%
Silicon Systems	N/A	7%	5%	10%	10%	11%
Texas Instruments	10%	10%	8%	12%	14%	13%
VLSI Technology	16%	24%	20%	25%	21%	18%
Xicor	N/A	34%	21%	34%	21%	13%
ZyMOS	N/A	43%	22%	24%	23%	19%
Total	12%	11%	10%	15%	15%	14%

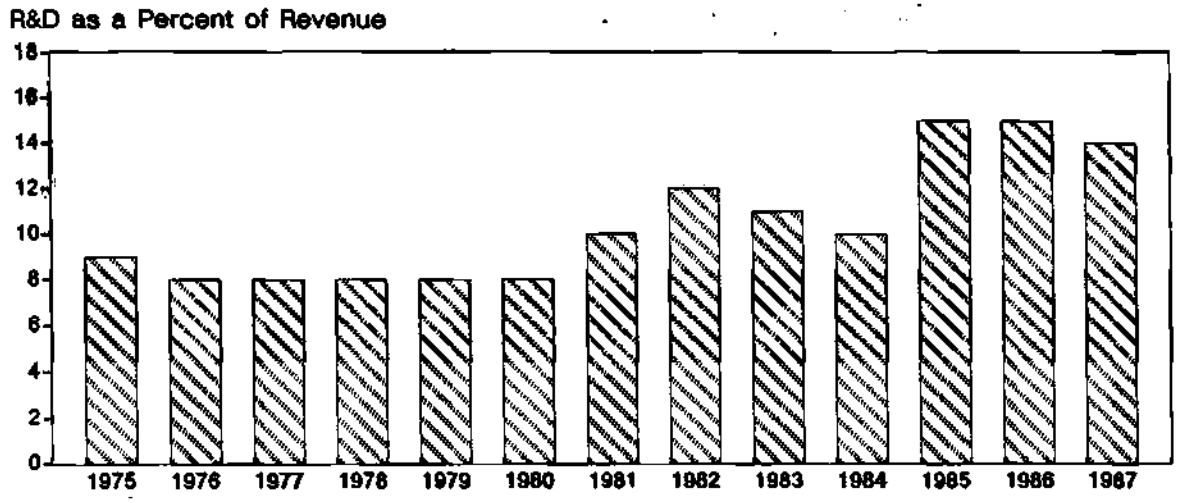
Note: Columns may not add to totals shown because of rounding.
N/A = Not Applicable

Source: Dataquest
January 1989

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures

Figure 2

U.S. Semiconductor R&D Expenditures
As a Percentage Revenue



0003122-2

Source: Dataquest
January 1989